Published by TSO (The Stationery Office) and available from:
Online
www.tsoshop.co.uk

Mail, Telephone, Fax & E-mail
TSO
PO Box 29, Norwich, NR3 1GN
Telephone orders/General enquiries: 0870 600 5522
Fax orders: 0870 600 5533
E-mail: customer.services@tso.co.uk
Textphone: 0870 240 3701

The Houses of Parliament Shop
12 Bridge Street, Parliament Square
London SW1A 2JX
Telephone orders/General enquiries: 020 7219 3890
Fax orders: 020 7219 3866
Email: shop@parliament.uk
Internet: http://www.shop.parliament.uk

TSO@Blackwell and other Accredited Agents

ISBN 978-0-10-540015-8
9 780105 400158

Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015

Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015

CHAPTER 26

Explanatory Notes have been produced to assist in the understanding of this Act and are available separately

£32.75

49030 Chapter 26 2015 Cover 13mm Spine / sig1 / plateA

Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015

CHAPTER 26

CONTENTS

PART 1

ACCESS TO FINANCE

Assignment of receivables

1 Power to invalidate certain restrictive terms of business contracts
2 Section 1(4)(a): meaning of "financial services"

Business payment practices

3 Companies: duty to publish report on payment practices and performance

Financial information about businesses

4 Small and medium sized businesses: information to credit reference agencies
5 Small and medium sized businesses: information to finance platforms
6 Sections 4 and 5: supplementary
7 Sections 4 to 6: interpretation
8 Disclosure of VAT registration information
9 Offences for the purposes of section 8

Exports

10 Disclosure of exporter information
11 Power of the Secretary of State under section 1 of the EIGA 1991
12 EIGA 1991: further amendments

Presentment of cheques etc

13 Electronic paying in of cheques etc

Payment systems

14 Powers of the Payment Systems Regulator

PART 2

REGULATORY REFORM

Streamlined company registration

15 Target for streamlined company registration
16 Streamlined company registration: duty to report on progress

Review of business appeals procedures

17 Review of regulators' complaints and appeals procedures
18 Power to specify regulatory functions
19 Guidance by the Secretary of State

Report on investigations under financial regulators' complaints scheme

20 Independent Complaints Commissioner: reporting duty

Business impact target

21 Duty on Secretary of State to publish business impact target etc
22 Sections 21 and 23 to 25: "qualifying regulatory provisions" etc
23 Duty on Secretary of State to publish reports
24 Additional matters to be included in reports
25 Appointment of body to verify assessments and lists in reports
26 Amending the business impact target etc
27 Sections 21 to 25 etc: interpretation

Secondary legislation: duty to review

28 Duty to review regulatory provisions in secondary legislation
29 Section 28(1)(b): interpretation
30 Section 28(2)(a): "provision for review"
31 Section 28(2)(b): appropriateness of making provision for review
32 Sections 28 to 31 etc: supplementary

Definitions of small and micro business

33 Definitions of small and micro business
34 Small and micro business regulations: further provision

Home businesses

35 Exclusion of home businesses from Part 2 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954
36 Section 35: supplementary and consequential provision

CMA recommendations

37 CMA to publish recommendations on proposals for Westminster legislation

Liability of bodies concerned with accounting standards

38 Exemption from liability for bodies concerned with accounting standards etc

PART 3

PUBLIC SECTOR PROCUREMENT

39 Regulations about procurement
40 Investigation of procurement functions

PART 4

THE PUBS CODE ADJUDICATOR AND THE PUBS CODE

The Pubs Code Adjudicator

41 The Adjudicator

Pubs Code

42 Pubs Code
43 Pubs Code: market rent only option
44 Market rent only option: procedure
45 Market rent only option: disputes
46 Review of Pubs Code
47 Inconsistency with Pubs Code etc

Arbitration by Adjudicator

48 Referral for arbitration by tied pub tenants
49 Timing of referral for arbitration by tied pub tenants
50 Arbitration commenced by pub-owning businesses
51 Arbitration: supplementary
52 Information about arbitration

Investigations by Adjudicator

53 Investigations
54 Investigation reports
55 Forms of enforcement
56 Recommendations
57 Requirements to publish information
58 Financial penalties
59 Recovery of investigation costs

Advice and guidance by Adjudicator

60 Advice
61 Guidance

Adjudicator's reporting requirements

62 Annual report

Funding of Adjudicator

63 Levy funding
64 Loans by Secretary of State

Supervision of Adjudicator

65 Review of Adjudicator and guidance from Secretary of State
66 Abolition of Adjudicator
67 Information to Secretary of State

Supplementary

68 "Tied pub"
69 "Pub-owning business"
70 "Tied pub tenant", "landlord", "tenancy" and "licence"
71 Power to grant exemptions from Pubs Code
72 Interpretation: other provision
73 Regulations under this Part

PART 5

CHILDCARE AND SCHOOLS

74 Funding for free of charge early years provision
75 Exemption from requirement to register as early years provider
76 Childminding other than on domestic premises
77 Registration of childcare: premises

PART 6

EDUCATION EVALUATION

78 Assessments of effectiveness
79 Qualifications
80 Destinations

PART 7

COMPANIES: TRANSPARENCY

Register of people with significant control

81 Register of people with significant control
82 Review of provisions about PSC registers

Register of interests disclosed

83 Amendment of section 813 of the Companies Act 2006

Abolition of share warrants to bearer

84 Abolition of share warrants to bearer
85 Amendment of company's articles to reflect abolition of share warrants
86 Review of section 84

Corporate directors

87 Requirement for all company directors to be natural persons
88 Review of section 87

Shadow directors

89 Application of directors' general duties to shadow directors
90 Shadow directors: definition
91 Shadow directors: provision for Northern Ireland

PART 8

COMPANY FILING REQUIREMENTS

Annual return reform

92 Duty to deliver confirmation statement instead of annual return
93 Section 92: related amendments

Additional information on the register

94 Option for companies to keep information on central register
95 Recording of optional information on register

Information about dates of birth

96 Protection of information about a person's date of birth

Statements of capital etc

97 Contents of statements of capital
98 Public companies: information about aggregate amount paid up on shares

Registered office disputes

99 Address of company registered office

Director disputes

100 Company filing requirements: consent to act as director or secretary
101 Registrar's duty to inform new directors of entry in register
102 Removal from register of material about directors

Accelerated strike-off

103 Reduction in notice periods etc for striking off companies

PART 9

DIRECTORS' DISQUALIFICATION ETC

New grounds for disqualification

104 Convictions abroad
105 Persons instructing unfit director

Determining unfitness

106 Determining unfitness and disqualifications: matters to be taken into account
107 Reports of office-holders on conduct of directors of insolvent companies

Director disqualification: other amendments

108 Unfit directors of insolvent companies: extension of period for applying for disqualification order
109 Directors: removal of restriction on application for disqualification order

Compensation awards

110 Compensation orders and undertakings

Consequential amendments and corresponding provision for Northern Ireland

111 Sections 104 to 110: consequential and related amendments
112 Provision for Northern Ireland corresponding to sections 104 to 111

Bankruptcy: Scotland and Northern Ireland

113 Disqualification as director: bankruptcy, etc in Scotland and Northern Ireland
114 Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002: bankruptcy, etc in England and Wales or Scotland
115 Disqualification as insolvency practitioner: bankruptcy, etc in Scotland or Northern Ireland
116 Disqualification as insolvency practitioner in Northern Ireland: bankruptcy, etc in England and Wales or Scotland

PART 10

INSOLVENCY

Office-holder actions

117 Power for administrator to bring claim for fraudulent or wrongful trading
118 Power for liquidator or administrator to assign causes of action
119 Application of proceeds of office-holder claims

Removing requirements to seek sanction

120 Exercise of powers by liquidator: removal of need for sanction
121 Exercise of powers by trustee in bankruptcy: removal of need for sanction

Position of creditors

122 Abolition of requirements to hold meetings: company insolvency
123 Abolition of requirements to hold meetings: individual insolvency
124 Ability for creditors to opt not to receive certain notices: company insolvency
125 Ability for creditors to opt not to receive certain notices: individual insolvency
126 Sections 122 to 125: further amendments

Administration

127 Extension of administrator's term of office
128 Administration: payments to unsecured creditors
129 Administration: sales to connected persons
130 Attachment of floating charges on administration (Scotland)

Small debts

131 Creditors not required to prove small debts: company insolvency
132 Creditors not required to prove small debts: individual insolvency

Trustees in bankruptcy

133 Trustees in bankruptcy

Voluntary arrangements

134 Time limit for challenging IVAs
135 Abolition of fast-track voluntary arrangements

Progress reports

136 Voluntary winding-up: progress reports

Regulation of insolvency practitioners: amendments to existing regime

137 Recognised professional bodies: recognition
138 Regulatory objectives
139 Oversight of recognised professional bodies
140 Recognised professional bodies: revocation of recognition
141 Court sanction of insolvency practitioners in public interest cases
142 Power for Secretary of State to obtain information
143 Compliance orders

Power to establish single regulator of insolvency practitioners

144 Power to establish single regulator of insolvency practitioners
145 Regulations under section 144: designation of existing body
146 Regulations under section 144: timing and supplementary

PART 11

EMPLOYMENT

Equal pay

147 Equal pay: transparency

Whistleblowing

148 Protected disclosures: reporting requirements
149 Protection for applicants for employment etc in the health service

Employment tribunals

150 Financial penalty for failure to pay sums ordered by employment tribunal etc
151 Employment tribunal procedure regulations: postponements

National minimum wage

152 Amount of financial penalty for underpayment of national minimum wage

Exclusivity in zero hours contracts

153 Exclusivity terms unenforceable in zero hours contracts

Public sector exit payments

154 Regulations in connection with public sector exit payments
155 Section 154(1): further provision
156 Power to make regulations to be exercisable by the Treasury or Scottish Ministers
157 Power of Secretary of State to waive repayment requirement

Concessionary coal

158 Concessionary coal

PART 12

GENERAL

159 Consequential amendments, repeals and revocations
160 Transitional, transitory or saving provision
161 Supplementary provision about regulations
162 Financial provisions
163 Extent
164 Commencement
165 Short title

Schedule 1 — The Pubs Code Adjudicator

Part 1 — The Pubs Code Adjudicator
Part 2 — Information powers of the Pubs Code Adjudicator
Part 3 — Amendments of legislation
Schedule 2 — Registration of childcare: premises
Schedule 3 — Register of people with significant control
Part 1 — Duty to obtain information and keep register
Part 2 — Related amendments
Schedule 4 — Abolition of share warrants to bearer
Part 1 — Arrangements for conversion and cancellation of existing share warrants
Part 2 — Consequential amendments
Schedule 5 — Option to keep information on central register
Part 1 — Creation of the option
Part 2 — Related amendments
Schedule 6 — Contents of statements of capital
Schedule 7 — Sections 104 to 110: consequential and related amendments
Part 1 — Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986
Part 2 — Other enactments
Schedule 8 — Northern Ireland: provision corresponding to sections 104 to 111
Schedule 9 — Abolition of requirements to hold meetings; opted-out creditors
Part 1 — Company insolvency
Part 2 — Individual insolvency
Schedule 10 — Trustees in bankruptcy
Schedule 11 — Single regulator of insolvency practitioners: supplementary provision

Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015

2015 CHAPTER 26

An Act to make provision about improved access to finance for businesses and individuals; to make provision about regulatory provisions relating to business and certain voluntary and community bodies; to make provision about the exercise of procurement functions by certain public authorities; to make provision for the creation of a Pubs Code and Adjudicator for the regulation of dealings by pub-owning businesses with their tied pub tenants; to make provision about the regulation of the provision of childcare; to make provision about information relating to the evaluation of education; to make provision about the regulation of companies; to make provision about company filing requirements; to make provision about the disqualification from appointments relating to companies; to make provision about insolvency; to make provision about the law relating to employment; and for connected purposes. [26th March 2015]

BE IT ENACTED by the Queen's most Excellent Majesty, by and with the advice and consent of the Lords Spiritual and Temporal, and Commons, in this present Parliament assembled, and by the authority of the same, as follows:—

PART 1

ACCESS TO FINANCE

Assignment of receivables

1 Power to invalidate certain restrictive terms of business contracts

(1) The appropriate authority may by regulations make provision for the purpose of securing that any non-assignment of receivables term of a relevant contract—

(a) has no effect;
(b) has no effect in relation to persons of a prescribed description;
(c) has effect in relation to persons of a prescribed description only for such purposes as may be prescribed.

(2) A "non-assignment of receivables term" of a contract is a term which prohibits or imposes a condition, or other restriction, on the assignment (or, in Scotland, assignation) by a party to the contract of the right to be paid any amount under the contract or any other contract between the parties.

(3) A contract is a relevant contract if—
(a) it is a contract for goods, services or intangible assets (including intellectual property) which is not an excluded financial services contract, and
(b) at least one of the parties has entered into it in connection with the carrying on of a business.

(4) An "excluded financial services contract" is a contract which—
(a) is for financial services (see section 2) or is a regulated agreement within the meaning of the Consumer Credit Act 1974 (see section 189 of that Act); and
(b) is of a prescribed description.

(5) "Prescribed" means prescribed by the regulations.

(6) The "appropriate authority" means—
(a) in relation to contracts to which the law of Scotland applies, the Scottish Ministers, and
(b) in relation to other contracts, the Secretary of State.

(7) The power of the Scottish Ministers to make regulations under this section includes power to make such provision as the Scottish Ministers consider appropriate in consequence of the regulations.

(8) The power conferred by subsection (7) includes power—
(a) to make transitional, transitory or saving provision;
(b) to amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision made by or under an enactment (including an enactment contained in this Act and any enactment passed or made in the same Session as this Act).

(9) In subsection (8) "enactment" includes an Act of the Scottish Parliament.

(10) Regulations under this section—
(a) if made by the Scottish Ministers, are subject to the affirmative procedure;
(b) if made by the Secretary of State, are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

2 Section 1(4)(a): meaning of "financial services"

(1) In section 1(4)(a) "financial services" means any service of a financial nature, including (but not limited to)—
(a) insurance-related services consisting of—
(i) direct life assurance;
(ii) direct insurance other than life assurance;

(iii) reinsurance and retrocession;
(iv) insurance intermediation, such as brokerage and agency;
(v) services auxiliary to insurance, such as consultancy, actuarial, risk assessment and claim settlement services;

(b) banking and other financial services consisting of—
(i) accepting deposits and other repayable funds;
(ii) lending (including consumer credit, mortgage credit, factoring and financing of commercial transactions);
(iii) financial leasing;
(iv) payment and money transmission services (including credit, charge and debit cards, travellers' cheques and bankers' drafts);
(v) providing guarantees or commitments;
(vi) financial trading (as defined in subsection (2));
(vii) participating in issues of any kind of securities (including underwriting and placement as an agent, whether publicly or privately) and providing services related to such issues;
(viii) money brokering;
(ix) asset management, such as cash or portfolio management, all forms of collective investment management, pension fund management, custodial, depository and trust services;
(x) settlement and clearing services for financial assets (including securities, derivative products and other negotiable instruments);
(xi) providing or transferring financial information, and financial data processing or related software (but only by suppliers of other financial services);
(xii) providing advisory and other auxiliary financial services in respect of any activity listed in sub-paragraphs (i) to (xi) (including credit reference and analysis, investment and portfolio research and advice, advice on acquisitions and on corporate restructuring and strategy).

(2) In subsection (1)(b)(vi) "financial trading" means trading for own account or for account of customers, whether on an investment exchange, in an over-the-counter market or otherwise, in—
(a) money market instruments (including cheques, bills and certificates of deposit);
(b) foreign exchange;
(c) derivative products (including futures and options);
(d) exchange rate and interest rate instruments (including products such as swaps and forward rate agreements);
(e) transferable securities;
(f) other negotiable instruments and financial assets (including bullion).

Business payment practices

3 Companies: duty to publish report on payment practices and performance

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations impose a requirement, on such descriptions of companies as may be prescribed, to publish, at such intervals and in such manner as may be prescribed, prescribed information about—

(a) the company's payment practices and policies relating to relevant contracts of a prescribed description, and

(b) the company's performance by reference to those practices and policies.

(2) For the purposes of this section—

"company" has the meaning given by section 1(1) of the Companies Act 2006 (but see subsection (3));

a contract is a "relevant contract" if—

(a) it is a contract for goods, services or intangible assets (including intellectual property), and

(b) the parties to the contract have entered into it in connection with the carrying on of a business;

"prescribed" means prescribed by the regulations.

(3) The regulations may not impose a requirement on a company in relation to any time during which—

(a) it qualifies as a micro-entity for the purposes of section 384A of the Companies Act 2006,

(b) the small companies regime under that Act applies to it (see section 381 of that Act), or

(c) it qualifies as medium-sized for the purposes of section 465 or 466 of that Act.

(4) "The company's payment practices and policies" has such meaning as may be prescribed and the information which may be prescribed may, in particular, include information—

(a) about the standard payment terms of the company and whether these are part of any code of conduct or code of ethics of the company,

(b) about payment terms of the company which are not standard,

(c) about the processing and payment of invoices,

(d) by reference to such codes of conduct or standards as may be prescribed and as are applicable to companies generally or to companies of a prescribed description,

(e) about disputes relating to the payment of invoices, including any dispute resolution mechanism that the company uses,

(f) about payments owed or paid by the company due to late payment of invoices, whether in respect of interest or otherwise.

(5) The regulations may require that information published in accordance with the regulations must be approved or signed by such description of person as may be prescribed.

(6) The regulations may require such of the information required to be published as may be prescribed to be given, in such form as may be prescribed, to prescribed persons.

(7) The regulations may make provision for a prescribed breach by a prescribed description of person of a requirement imposed by the regulations to be an offence punishable on summary conviction—

(a) in England and Wales, by a fine;

(b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, by a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

(8) Before making regulations under this section the Secretary of State must consult such persons as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

(9) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

Financial information about businesses

4 Small and medium sized businesses: information to credit reference agencies

(1) The Treasury may make regulations that impose—
  (a) a duty on designated banks to provide information about their small and medium sized business customers to designated credit reference agencies, and
  (b) a duty on designated credit reference agencies to provide information about small and medium sized businesses to finance providers.

(2) The regulations must provide that the duty in subsection (1)(a) only applies where—
  (a) a credit reference agency makes a request to a bank, and
  (b) the business customer to whom the information relates has agreed to the information being provided to a credit reference agency.

(3) The regulations must provide that the duty in subsection (1)(b) only applies where—
  (a) a finance provider makes a request to a credit reference agency, and
  (b) the business to whom the information relates has agreed to the information being provided to the finance provider.

(4) The regulations may provide that the duty in subsection (1)(b) only applies where other conditions are met, such as the finance provider—
  (a) complying with the credit reference agency's terms and conditions, and
  (b) providing information on its small and medium sized business customers to the credit reference agency (subject to the agreement of those customers).

(5) The regulations must describe the information—
  (a) to which the duty in subsection (1)(a) applies;
  (b) to which the duty in subsection (1)(b) applies;
  (c) which may be required as mentioned in subsection (4)(b).

(6) The regulations may make provision about—
  (a) how a request for information must be made by a credit reference agency or finance provider;
  (b) the time period within which information must be provided following a request;
  (c) the form in which information must be provided;
  (d) how a business may indicate agreement for the purposes of subsection (2)(b), (3)(b) or (4)(b) (and for the purposes of subsection (2)(b) this may include imposing an obligation on a designated bank to include an appropriate term in its standard terms and conditions or to otherwise seek agreement).

(7) The regulations must make provision for the designation of banks and credit reference agencies by the Treasury, and the regulations may in particular provide for—
  (a) conditions that must be met for a bank or credit reference agency to be designated;
  (b) considerations that the Treasury may take into account before deciding whether to designate a bank or credit reference agency;
  (c) the Treasury to consider the advice of another person before making a designation;
  (d) the procedure for designating a bank or credit reference agency;
  (e) how the list of designated banks and credit reference agencies must be published;
  (f) the revocation of a designation.

5 Small and medium sized businesses: information to finance platforms

(1) Where—
  (a) a small or medium sized business has applied to a designated bank for a loan or other credit facility, and
  (b) the application has been unsuccessful,

  the Treasury may by regulations impose a duty on the bank to provide specified information about the business to designated finance platforms.

(2) The regulations—
  (a) must provide that the duty only applies where the business to which the information relates agrees to its information being provided to the designated finance platforms;
  (b) may require a bank—
    (i) to seek the agreement of a business for the purposes of paragraph (a);
    (ii) to ask the business for any of the specified information that the bank does not already have;
    (iii) to provide the information to the finance platforms within a specified time period.

(3) The regulations may make further provision about the duty in subsection (1), which may in particular include provision about—
  (a) the types of loans and credit facilities that trigger the duty,
  (b) the circumstances in which an application is to be considered unsuccessful, and
  (c) the finance platforms to which information must be provided.

(4) Where a finance platform has received information by virtue of subsection (1), the Treasury may by regulations—
  (a) impose a duty on the finance platform to provide specified information to all finance providers requesting access to the information, and
  (b) impose a duty on the finance platform to provide specified information about a particular business to a finance provider where—
    (i) the finance provider has requested information about the business, and
    (ii) the business has agreed to its information being provided to the finance provider.

(5) Information specified for the purposes of subsection (4)(a) must be in such a form that no individual business, and no person associated with the business, can be identified.

(6) The regulations may provide that the duty in subsection (4)(a) or (b) does not apply unless—
  (a) the finance provider or business agrees to the finance platform's terms and conditions;
  (b) the finance provider complies with specified requirements about the use and disclosure of the information.

(7) The regulations may make further provision about the duties in subsection (4)(a) and (b), including in particular provision—
  (a) requiring the finance platform to provide the information within a specified time period;
  (b) setting out how a request by a finance provider must be made to a finance platform;
  (c) setting out how a business may indicate agreement for the purposes of subsection (4)(b)(ii);
  (d) about the time period for which information must be kept by the finance platform;
  (e) about the removal of information from the finance platform.

(8) The regulations may make provision—
  (a) prohibiting finance platforms from charging fees to small and medium sized businesses, or
  (b) permitting finance platforms to charge fees to small and medium sized businesses.

(9) The regulations must make provision for the designation of banks and finance platforms by the Treasury, and the regulations may in particular provide for—
  (a) conditions that must be met for a bank or finance platform to be designated;
  (b) considerations that the Treasury may take into account before deciding whether to designate a bank or finance platform;
  (c) the Treasury to consider the advice of another person before making a designation;
  (d) the procedure for designating a bank or finance platform;
  (e) how the list of designated banks and finance platforms must be published;
  (f) the revocation of a designation.

(10) In this section "specified" means specified or described in the regulations.

6 Sections 4 and 5: supplementary

(1) Regulations under sections 4 and 5 may make provision enabling the Financial Conduct Authority to take action for monitoring and enforcing compliance with the regulations.

(2) The regulations may apply, or make provision corresponding to, any of the provisions of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 or subordinate legislation made under that Act, with or without modification.

(3) Those provisions include in particular—

(a) provisions about investigations, including powers of entry and search and criminal offences;

(b) provisions for the grant of an injunction (or, in Scotland, an interdict) in relation to a contravention or anticipated contravention;

(c) provisions giving the Financial Conduct Authority powers to impose disciplinary measures (including financial penalties) or to give directions;

(d) provisions giving a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975) or the Financial Conduct Authority powers to make subordinate legislation;

(e) provisions for the Financial Conduct Authority to charge fees.

(4) Regulations under sections 4 and 5 may make provision that enables complaints about the activities of designated credit reference agencies or designated finance platforms to be dealt with under the scheme established by Part 16 of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (financial ombudsman scheme), and for that purpose the regulations may—

(a) apply, or make provision corresponding to, any of the provisions of that Part or rules made under that Part (with or without modifications);

(b) impose obligations on—

(i) the Financial Conduct Authority;

(ii) the scheme operator (within the meaning of that Part);

(iii) an ombudsman (within the meaning of that Part).

(5) Regulations under section 4 may impose a duty on designated credit reference agencies to provide information received by virtue of section 4(1)(a) or (4)(b) to the Bank of England, and may allow or require the Bank of England to share that information with persons or for purposes specified or described in the regulations; but the regulations must include provision protecting the confidentiality of information so provided.

(6) Regulations under section 4 may provide that a failure to comply with a duty imposed by virtue of section 4(1) may be actionable at the suit of a person who has suffered loss as a result of it (subject to the defences and other incidents applying to actions for breach of statutory duty).

(7) Regulations under section 4 may provide that the following provisions apply to designated credit reference agencies in the same way as they apply to credit reference agencies within the meaning of those provisions—

(a) sections 157 to 160 of the Consumer Credit Act 1974 (duties to disclose and correct information) and regulations made under those sections;

(b) section 7 of the Data Protection Act 1998 (right of access to personal data) and regulations made under that section;

(c) section 9 of the Data Protection Act 1998 (right of access to personal data where data controller is credit reference agency) and regulations made under that section.

(8) Regulations under section 4 may provide a small or medium sized business with the right to apply to a court for an order to rectify, block, erase or destroy data held about the business by a designated credit reference agency.

(9) Regulations under section 5 may impose a duty on designated finance platforms to provide statistical information to the Treasury.

(10) Regulations under section 4 or 5 are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

7 Sections 4 to 6: interpretation

(1) For the purposes of sections 4 to 6, a business is a small or medium sized business if—
  (a) it has an annual turnover of less than £25 million,
  (b) it carries out commercial activities,
  (c) it does not carry out regulated activities as its principal activity, and
  (d) it is not owned or controlled by a public authority.

Regulations under those sections may make further provision for the purposes of determining which businesses they apply to (including provision about the calculation of turnover and the determination of control).

(2) In sections 4 to 6 and this section—

"designated bank" means a bank that has been designated by the Treasury by virtue of section 4(7) or 5(9);

"designated credit reference agency" means a credit reference agency that has been designated by the Treasury by virtue of section 4(7);

"designated finance platform" means a finance platform that has been designated by the Treasury by virtue of section 5(9);

"finance platform" means a person that provides a service for the exchange of information between finance providers and businesses that require finance;

"finance provider" means a body corporate that—
  (a) lends money or provides credit in the course of a business,
  (b) arranges or facilitates the provision of debt or equity finance in the course of a business, or
  (c) provides, arranges or facilitates invoice discounting or factoring in the course of a business,

and regulations under sections 4 and 5 may make further provision for the purpose of determining which finance providers they apply to;

"public authority" has the same meaning as in the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (see section 3 of that Act);

"regulated activities" has the same meaning as in the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (see section 22 of that Act);

"subordinate legislation" has the same meaning as in the Interpretation Act 1978 (see section 21 of that Act).

(3) The Treasury may by regulations change the figure for the time being specified in subsection (1)(a).

(4) Before making regulations under subsection (3) the Treasury must consult such persons as they consider appropriate.

(5) Regulations under subsection (3) are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

8 Disclosure of VAT registration information

(1) The Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs may disclose to a person ("P") any of the information included in the VAT registration of

another person ("V") if the disclosure is for the purpose of enabling or assisting P to assess—

(a) V's creditworthiness,

(b) V's compliance with regulatory requirements relating to financial matters, or

(c) the risk of fraud by V.

(2) But subsection (1) does not authorise the Commissioners to disclose any information which is, in the Commissioners' view, financial information relating to any business carried on by V.

(3) If VAT registration information is disclosed to a person in accordance with subsection (1), that person must not further disclose any of the information unless the Commissioners consent to the disclosure.

(4) If VAT registration information is disclosed to a person in accordance with subsection (3) or this subsection, that person must not further disclose any of the information unless the Commissioners consent to the disclosure.

(5) A person does not contravene subsection (3) or (4) by disclosing a financial assessment made wholly or partly in reliance on the VAT registration information, if the financial assessment itself does not include any VAT registration information.

(6) If VAT registration information is disclosed to a person in accordance with subsection (1), (3) or (4), that person must not use that information except for the purposes of making a financial assessment.

(7) A person does not contravene subsection (6) by using, for any purpose, a financial assessment made wholly or partly in reliance on the VAT registration information.

(8) The Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs may make arrangements with any person about disclosures of information to that person (the "recipient") under subsection (1).

(9) The arrangements may (in particular) provide for—

(a) a fee to be payable by the recipient for the disclosure of information;

(b) conditions to apply to the recipient in relation to information disclosed (including conditions relating to the transfer, holding and processing of the information);

(c) financial penalties to be payable by the recipient for a failure to meet conditions which apply to the recipient under the arrangements.

(10) The Treasury may, by regulations, amend this section so that it authorises the Commissioners to disclose VAT registration information included in a person's VAT registration for additional purposes.

(11) In this section—

"financial assessment" means an assessment of a kind mentioned in subsection (1)(a), (b) or (c);

"VAT registration" means registration under the Value Added Tax Act 1994;

"VAT registration information" means information of the kind that the Commissioners are authorised to disclose under subsection (1) (as read with subsection (2)).

(12) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

9 Offences for the purposes of section 8

(1) A person commits an offence if the person discloses information in contravention of section 8(3) or (4).

(2) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under subsection (1) to prove that the person reasonably believed that the disclosure of the information was lawful.

(3) A person commits an offence if the person uses information in contravention of section 8(6).

(4) It is a defence for a person charged with an offence under subsection (3) to prove that the person reasonably believed that the use of the information was lawful.

(5) Section 19(4) to (7) of the Commissioners for Revenue and Customs Act 2005 apply to an offence under this section as they apply to an offence under section 19 of that Act.

(6) This section is without prejudice to the pursuit of any remedy or the taking of any action in relation to a contravention of section 8(1), (3), (4) or (6) (whether or not this section applies to the contravention).

Exports

10 Disclosure of exporter information

(1) The Commissioners for Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs may, by regulations, make provision authorising officers of Revenue and Customs to disclose prescribed information about the export of goods from the United Kingdom.

(2) In subsection (1) "prescribed information" means information of a kind that is prescribed in the regulations.

(3) But the regulations may only prescribe the following kinds of information—
  (a) the commodity code of goods that have been exported from the United Kingdom (a "prescribed code");
  (b) a description of the category of goods covered by a prescribed code;
  (c) the names and addresses of persons who have exported goods covered by a prescribed code;
  (d) the years and months in which a particular person has exported goods covered by a prescribed code.

(4) Regulations under this section may make such provision as the Commissioners think appropriate in connection with the provision authorising officers of Revenue and Customs to disclose prescribed information (including provision about the manner in which information may be disclosed).

(5) In this section "commodity code" means a code or other identifier applied to a category of goods in connection with the preparation of statistics on exports from the United Kingdom (whether or not it is also applied for other purposes).

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

11 Power of the Secretary of State under section 1 of the EIGA 1991

(1) Section 1 of the Export and Investment Guarantees Act 1991 (assistance in connection with exports of goods and services) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsections (1) and (1A) substitute—

"(1) The Secretary of State may make arrangements under this section which the Secretary of State considers are conducive to supporting or developing (whether directly or indirectly) supplies or potential supplies by persons carrying on business in the United Kingdom of goods, services or intangible assets (including intellectual property) to persons carrying on business outside the United Kingdom."

(3) After subsection (4) insert—

"(5) The arrangements that may be made under this section also include the provision of advice or information."

(4) For the heading of the section substitute "Arrangements for the support and development of supplies, etc".

12 EIGA 1991: further amendments

(1) The Export and Investment Guarantees Act 1991 is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1) of section 6 (limit on the Secretary of State's commitments under the Act) for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute "67,700 million special drawing rights".

(3) In subsection (3) of that section, for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute "26,200 million special drawing rights".

(4) In subsection (4) of that section—
- (a) in paragraph (a)—
  - (i) for "either of the limits" substitute "the limit";
  - (ii) omit "£5,000 million or, as the case may be,";
- (b) in paragraph (b)—
  - (i) for "either of the limits" substitute "the limit";
  - (ii) omit "£3,000 million or, as the case may be,";
- (c) omit "but the Secretary of State shall not in respect of any limit exercise the power on more than three occasions".

(5) At the end of subsection (4) of that section, insert "after the commencement of section 12 of the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015".

(6) After subsection (4) of that section insert—

"(4A) The Secretary of State must not in respect of either limit mentioned in subsection (4) exercise the power to make an order on more than three occasions."

(7) In subsection (5) of that section—
- (a) omit paragraphs (c) and (d);
- (b) in paragraph (e) omit "in foreign currency".

(8) In subsection (6) of that section, for "(1)(b) or (3)(b)" substitute "(1) or (3)".

(9) In section 7(2) of that Act (reports and returns), leave out "in sterling and in foreign currency".

(10) In section 13 of that Act (Export Credits Guarantee Department and Export Guarantees Advisory Council), omit subsection (4).

Presentment of cheques etc

13 Electronic paying in of cheques etc

(1) The Bills of Exchange Act 1882 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 89 insert—

"PART 4A

PRESENTMENT OF CHEQUES AND OTHER INSTRUMENTS BY ELECTRONIC MEANS

89A Presentment of instruments by electronic means

(1) Presentment for payment of an instrument to which this section applies may be effected by provision of an electronic image of both faces of the instrument, instead of by presenting the physical instrument, if the person to whom presentment is made accepts the presentment as effective.
This is subject to regulations under subsection (2) and to section 89C.

(2) The Treasury may by regulations prescribe circumstances in which subsection (1) does not apply.

(3) Regulations under subsection (2) may in particular prescribe circumstances by reference to—
(a) descriptions of instrument;
(b) arrangements under which presentment is made;
(c) descriptions of persons by or to whom presentment is made;
(d) descriptions of persons receiving payment or on whose behalf payment is received.

(4) Where presentment for payment is made under subsection (1)—
(a) any requirement—
(i) that the physical instrument must be exhibited, presented or delivered on or in connection with presentment or payment (including after presentment or payment or in connection with dishonour for non-payment), or
(ii) as to the day, time or place on or at which presentment of the physical instrument may be or is to be made, and
(b) any other requirement which is inconsistent with subsection (1),
does not apply.

(5) Subsection (4) does not affect any requirement as to the latest time for presentment.

(6) References in subsections (4) and (5) to a requirement are to a requirement or prohibition, whether imposed by or under any enactment, by a rule of law or by the instrument in question.

(7) Where an instrument is presented for payment under this section—
  (a) any banker providing the electronic image,
  (b) any banker to whom it is provided, and
  (c) any banker making payment of the instrument as a result of provision of the electronic image,

are subject to the same duties in relation to collection and payment of the instrument as if the physical instrument had been presented.

This is subject to any provision made by or under this Part.

89B Instruments to which section 89A applies

(1) Subject to subsection (2), section 89A applies to—
  (a) a cheque, or
  (b) any other bill of exchange or any promissory note or other instrument—
    (i) which appears to be intended by the person creating it to enable a person to obtain payment from a banker indicated in it of the sum so mentioned,
    (ii) payment of which requires the instrument to be presented, and
    (iii) which, but for section 89A, could not be presented otherwise than by presenting the physical instrument.

(2) Section 89A does not apply to any banknote (within the meaning given in section 208 of the Banking Act 2009).

(3) The reference in subsection (1) to the person creating an instrument is—
  (a) in the case of a bill of exchange, a reference to the drawer;
  (b) in the case of a promissory note, a reference to the maker.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (1)(b)(i) an indication may be by code or number and need not indicate that payment is intended to be obtained from the banker.

89C Banker's obligation in relation to accepting physical instrument for presentment

Provision of an electronic image of an instrument does not constitute presentment of the instrument under section 89A if the arrangements between—
  (a) the banker authorised to collect payment of the instrument on behalf of a customer, and
  (b) that customer,

do not permit the customer to pay in the physical instrument but instead require an electronic image to be provided (whether to that banker or to any other person).

89D Copies of instruments and evidence of payment

(1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for—
  (a) requiring a copy of an instrument paid as a result of presentment under section 89A to be provided, on request, to

the creator of the instrument by the banker who paid the instrument;

(b) a copy of an instrument provided in accordance with the regulations to be evidence of receipt by a person identified in accordance with the regulations of the sum payable by the instrument.

(2) Regulations under subsection (1)(a) may in particular—

(a) prescribe the manner and form in which a copy is to be provided;

(b) require the copy to be certified to be a true copy of the electronic image provided to the banker making the payment on presentment under section 89A;

(c) provide for the copy to be accompanied by prescribed information;

(d) require any copy to be provided free of charge or permit charges to be made for the provision of copies in prescribed circumstances.

(3) The reference in subsection (1)(a) to the creator of the instrument is—

(a) in the case of a bill of exchange, a reference to the drawer;

(b) in the case of a promissory note, a reference to the maker.

89E Compensation in cases of presentment by electronic means

(1) The Treasury may by regulations make provision for the responsible banker to compensate any person for any loss of a kind specified by the regulations which that person incurs in connection with electronic presentment or purported electronic presentment of an instrument.

(2) In this section "electronic presentment or purported electronic presentment of an instrument" includes—

(a) presentment of an instrument to which section 89A applies under that section;

(b) presentment of any other instrument by any means involving provision of an electronic image by which it may be presented for payment;

(c) purported presentment for payment by any means involving provision of an electronic image of an instrument that may not be presented for payment in that way;

(d) provision, in purported presentment for payment, of—

(i) an electronic image that purports to be, but is not, an image of a physical instrument (including an image that has been altered electronically), or

(ii) an electronic image of an instrument which has no legal effect; or

(e) provision, in presentment or purported presentment for payment, of an electronic image which has been stolen.

(3) In this section, the "responsible banker", in relation to electronic presentment or purported electronic presentment of an instrument, means—

(a) the banker who is authorised to collect payment of the instrument on a customer's behalf, or

(b) if the holder of the instrument is a banker, that banker.

(4) In this section—

(a) references to an instrument include references to an instrument which has no legal effect (whether because it has been fraudulently altered or created, or because it has been discharged, or otherwise);

(b) in relation to an electronic image which is not an image of a physical instrument, references to the instrument are to a purported instrument (of which it purports to be an image); and

(c) in relation to an instrument which is not a bill of exchange or promissory note, references to the holder are to the payee or indorsee of the instrument who is in possession of it or, if it is payable to bearer, the person in possession of it.

(5) Regulations under this section may in particular make provision for—

(a) the responsible banker to be required to pay compensation irrespective of fault;

(b) the amount of compensation to be reduced by virtue of anything done, or any failure to act, by the person to whom compensation is payable.

(6) Nothing in this section or regulations under it is to be taken to—

(a) prevent the responsible banker claiming a contribution from any other person, or

(b) affect any remedy available to the responsible banker in contract or otherwise.

(7) Except so far as regulations under this section provide expressly, nothing in this section or regulations under it is to be taken to affect any liability of the responsible banker which exists apart from this section or any such regulations.

89F Supplementary

(1) Regulations under this Part may—

(a) include incidental, supplementary and consequential provision;

(b) make transitory or transitional provision or savings;

(c) make different provision for different cases or circumstances or for different purposes;

(d) make provision subject to exceptions.

(2) The power to make regulations under this Part is exercisable by statutory instrument.

(3) An instrument containing—

(a) regulations under section 89A or 89D, or

(b) the first regulations to be made under section 89E,

may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by resolution of, each House of Parliament.

(4) An instrument containing any other regulations under section 89E is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(5) For the purposes of this Part, a banker collects payment of an instrument on behalf of a customer by—
  (a) receiving payment of the instrument for the customer, or
  (b) receiving payment of the instrument for the banker (but not as holder), having—
    (i) credited the customer's account with the amount of the instrument, or
    (ii) otherwise given value to the customer in respect of the instrument.

(6) Section 89E(4) applies for the purposes of subsection (5) in its application to section 89E."

(3) In section 52(4) (bills of exchange: duties of holder on presentment and payment), at the beginning insert "Subject to Part 4A (presentment by electronic means),".

(4) Omit sections 74B and 74C (which provide for alternative means of presentment of cheque for payment by banker).

(5) In section 87 (promissory notes: presentment for payment), at the end insert—

"(4) This section is subject to Part 4A (presentment by electronic means)."

(6) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to presentment of instruments after it comes into force, including instruments created before that time.

Payment systems

14 Powers of the Payment Systems Regulator

(1) Part 5 of the Financial Services (Banking Reform) Act 2013 (regulation of payment systems) is amended as follows.

(2) Section 58 (power to require disposal of interest in payment system) is amended as provided in subsections (3) and (4).

(3) In subsection (1), for the words following "interest in" substitute "—
  (a) the operator of a regulated payment system, or
  (b) an infrastructure provider in relation to such a system,
to dispose of all or part of that interest."

(4) After subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) The reference in subsection (2) to a restriction or distortion of competition includes, in particular, a restriction or distortion of competition—
  (a) between different operators of payment systems,
  (b) between different payment services providers, or
  (c) between different infrastructure providers."

(5) In section 108 (relationship with Part 8 of the Payment Services Regulations 2009), in subsection (1)—
  (a) for "this Part" substitute "sections 54 to 58",

(b) for "obtain access to, or otherwise participate in," substitute "obtain direct access to", and
(c) for "does not apply" substitute "applies".

PART 2

REGULATORY REFORM

Streamlined company registration

15 Target for streamlined company registration

(1) The Secretary of State must secure that, by no later than 31 May 2017, a system for streamlined company registration is in place.

(2) For the purposes of this section and section 16, a system for streamlined company registration is a system which enables all of the registration information to be delivered by or on behalf of a person who wishes to form a company after 31 May 2017—
(a) on a single occasion to a single recipient, and
(b) by electronic means.

(3) "Registration information" means—
(a) the documents which must be delivered to the registrar under section 9 of the Companies Act 2006 (registration documents) in respect of the formation of a company;
(b) the documents or other information which must or may be delivered to Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs in respect of registration of a company for purposes connected with VAT, corporation tax and PAYE.

(4) In this section—
"company", "electronic means" and "the registrar" have the same meanings as in the Companies Acts (see sections 1(1), 1168(4) and 1060 of the Companies Act 2006 respectively);
"VAT" means value added tax charged in accordance with the Value Added Tax Act 1994.

16 Streamlined company registration: duty to report on progress

(1) The Secretary of State must prepare a report before the end of each reporting period about the progress that has been made during that period towards putting in place a system for streamlined company registration.

(2) The following are reporting periods—
(a) the period beginning with the day on which this section comes into force and ending on 31 March 2016;
(b) the subsequent period of 12 months ending on 31 March 2017.

(3) The first report must set out the steps which the Secretary of State expects will be taken during the next reporting period towards putting the system in place.

(4) Both reports must include the Secretary of State's assessment as to when the system for streamlined company registration will be in place.

(5) The second report must include an assessment of what steps, if any, the Secretary of State expects to take to put in place a system for the streamlining of other information delivery processes relating to businesses.

(6) The Secretary of State must—
  (a) publish each report, and
  (b) lay each report before Parliament.

Review of business appeals procedures

17 Review of regulators' complaints and appeals procedures

(1) A Minister of the Crown must appoint a person for the purposes of this section in respect of each regulatory function to which this section applies (see section 18).

(2) A person so appointed (a "reviewer") must, in relation to each regulatory function in respect of which the appointment is made—
  (a) review the effectiveness during each reporting period of the procedures (both formal and informal) of the relevant regulator for handling and resolving complaints and appeals made by businesses to the regulator in connection with the exercise by the regulator of the function, and
  (b) prepare a report about the findings of the review.

(3) In this section "relevant regulator", in relation to a regulatory function, means the person who exercises the function.

(4) The report may include in particular—
  (a) an assessment of the extent to which the relevant regulator's procedures of the kind mentioned in subsection (2)(a) are accessible and fair to businesses;
  (b) recommendations to the relevant regulator about how the procedures, or the way in which they are operated, could be improved;
  (c) recommendations to the Minister of the Crown who appointed the reviewer for any change in the law which the reviewer considers would lead to improvements in the procedures or their operation.

(5) The report must not address, and the reviewer must not make any recommendation in relation to, the outcome of any particular case.

(6) For the purposes of this section, each of the following is a reporting period—
  (a) the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which the reviewer is appointed;
  (b) each subsequent period of 12 months.

(7) The reviewer must send the report to the relevant regulator and (if different) the Minister of the Crown who appointed the reviewer as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the reporting period.

(8) Before the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the day on which the relevant regulator receives the report, the regulator must—
  (a) prepare a response and send it to the reviewer, and
  (b) if the relevant regulator is not the Minister of the Crown who appointed the reviewer, send it to the Minister.

(9) The Minister of the Crown must—
  (a) publish the report and the response, and
  (b) lay them before Parliament.

(10) The reviewer may by notice require the relevant regulator to provide such documents or other information, in such form or manner as the reviewer may direct, as the reviewer may require for the purpose of exercising functions under this section.

(11) Subsection (10) is subject to any express restriction on disclosure imposed by another enactment (ignoring any restriction which allows disclosure if authorised by an enactment).

(12) In this section "Minister of the Crown" has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975.

18 Power to specify regulatory functions

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify regulatory functions as functions to which section 17 applies.

(2) "Regulatory function" has the same meaning in this section and section 17 as in the Legislative and Regulatory Reform Act 2006 (see section 32(2) to (4) of that Act).

(3) Regulations under this section may, in particular, specify a regulatory function by reference to—
  (a) the person who exercises the function;
  (b) the enactment under or by virtue of which it was conferred.

(4) Regulations under this section must not specify a regulatory function of the Commission for Equality and Human Rights.

(5) Regulations under this section must not specify a regulatory function which is—
  (a) a Scottish devolved function, that is to say a function the exercise of which would be within devolved competence (within the meaning of section 54 of the Scotland Act 1998),
  (b) a Northern Ireland devolved function, that is to say a function which could be conferred by provision included in an Act of the Northern Ireland Assembly made without the consent of the Secretary of State (see sections 6 to 8 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), or
  (c) a Welsh devolved function, that is to say a function which could be conferred by provision falling within the legislative competence of the National Assembly for Wales (see section 108 of the Government of Wales Act 2006).

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

19 Guidance by the Secretary of State

(1) The Secretary of State may issue guidance to reviewers as to the exercise of functions under section 17.

(2) A reviewer must, in exercising any of those functions, have regard to any guidance for the time being in force under this section.

(3) The Secretary of State must—
  (a) publish any guidance or revised guidance issued under this section, and
  (b) lay any such guidance or revised guidance before Parliament.

(4) In this section "reviewer" has the same meaning as in section 17.

Report on investigations under financial regulators' complaints scheme

20 Independent Complaints Commissioner: reporting duty

In section 87 of the Financial Services Act 2012 (investigation of complaints against regulators), after subsection (9) insert—

"(9A) The complaints scheme must provide—
  (a) for the investigator to prepare an annual report on its investigations under the scheme, to publish it and send a copy of it to each regulator and to the Treasury;
  (b) for each regulator to respond to any recommendations or criticisms relating to it in the report, to publish the response and send a copy of it to the investigator and the Treasury;
  (c) for the Treasury to lay the annual report and any response before Parliament.

(9B) The complaints scheme may make provision about the period to which each annual report must relate ("the reporting period") and the contents of the report and must in particular provide for it to include—
  (a) information concerning any general trends emerging from the investigations undertaken during the reporting period;
  (b) any recommendations which the investigator considers appropriate as to the steps a regulator should take in response to such trends;
  (c) a review of the effectiveness during the reporting period of the procedures (both formal and informal) of each regulator for handling and resolving complaints which have been investigated by the investigator during the reporting period;
  (d) an assessment of the extent to which those procedures were accessible and fair, including where appropriate an assessment in relation to different categories of complainant;
  (e) any recommendations about how those procedures, or the way in which they are operated, could be improved."

Business impact target

21 Duty on Secretary of State to publish business impact target etc

(1) Before the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the commencement of a Parliament, the Secretary of State must publish—
  (a) a target for the Government in respect of the economic impact on business activities of qualifying regulatory provisions which come into force or cease to be in force during the relevant period, and
  (b) an interim target applying at the end of the period of three years beginning with the commencement of the Parliament.

(2) In this section and sections 24 to 26 the target mentioned in subsection (1)(a) is referred to as the "business impact target".

(3) At the same time as publishing a business impact target and an interim target, the Secretary of State must publish—
  (a) a determination under section 22(2), and
  (b) a methodology to be used for assessing the economic impact mentioned in subsection (1)(a).

(4) The Secretary of State must lay each thing published under subsection (1) or (3) before Parliament.

(5) Subsection (6) applies when the Secretary of State is—
  (a) determining a business impact target for publication under subsection (1)(a), or
  (b) making a determination under section 22(2).

(6) The Secretary of State must, in particular, have regard to—
  (a) the effect of regulation on economic growth and competitiveness,
  (b) the need to minimise any disproportionate impact of regulation on activities carried on by smaller scale businesses or voluntary or community bodies,
  (c) the aim of delivering efficiency in regulating business activities while keeping the costs to businesses or voluntary or community bodies to a minimum.

(7) In this section and sections 23 to 26—
  the "relevant day" means the day after a polling day for a parliamentary general election; and
  the "relevant period" is the period beginning with the relevant day and ending with the polling day for the next parliamentary general election.

(8) Subsection (7) is to be read in accordance with the Fixed-term Parliaments Act 2011.

(9) This section and sections 22 to 27 (the "target provisions") apply only where the commencement of a Parliament mentioned in subsection (1) above occurs—
  (a) not more than 12 months before the target provisions come into force, or
  (b) after the target provisions have come into force.

(10) Subsection (11) applies if an early parliamentary election is to take place in accordance with section 2 of the Fixed-term Parliaments Act 2011 before the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the commencement of a Parliament.

(11) Any duty imposed by the target provisions which would apply at any time before the commencement of the next Parliament is to be disregarded.

22 Sections 21 and 23 to 25: "qualifying regulatory provisions" etc

(1) This section applies for the purposes of sections 21 and 23 to 25.

(2) "Qualifying regulatory provisions" means regulatory provisions which the Secretary of State determines are to be qualifying regulatory provisions for the purposes of section 21(1)(a).

(3) A "regulatory provision", in relation to a business activity, means a statutory provision which—
  (a) imposes or amends requirements, restrictions or conditions, or sets or amends standards or gives or amends guidance, in relation to the activity, or
  (b) relates to the securing of compliance with, or the enforcement of, requirements, restrictions, conditions, standards or guidance which relate to the activity.

(4) But a "regulatory provision" does not include a statutory provision if or to the extent that—
  (a) it makes or amends—
    (i) provision imposing, abolishing or varying any tax, duty, levy or other charge, or
    (ii) provision in connection with provision falling within sub-paragraph (i);
  (b) it makes or amends provision in connection with procurement;
  (c) it makes or amends provision in connection with the giving of grants or other financial assistance by or on behalf of a public authority;
  (d) it makes or amends provision which is to have effect for a period of less than 12 months.

(5) Where a statutory provision comes into force or ceases to be in force for some but not all purposes, references to regulatory provisions or qualifying regulatory provisions coming into force or ceasing to be in force are to be read as referring to those provisions in so far as they have come into force or ceased to be in force for those purposes.

(6) Subject to subsection (7) a "statutory provision" is—
  (a) a provision of an Act,
  (b) a provision of subordinate legislation made by a Minister of the Crown, or
  (c) any other provision which has effect by virtue of the exercise of a function conferred on a Minister of the Crown by an Act.

(7) A "statutory provision" does not include—
  (a) a provision which would be within the legislative competence of the Scottish Parliament if it were contained in an Act of that Parliament (see section 29 of the Scotland Act 1998),
  (b) a provision which could be included in an Act of the Northern Ireland Assembly made without the consent of the Secretary of State (see sections 6 to 8 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), or
  (c) a provision falling within the legislative competence of the National Assembly for Wales (see section 108 of the Government of Wales Act 2006).

(8) In this section—
  "Minister of the Crown" has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975;
  "public authority" has the same meaning as in the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (see section 3 of that Act); and
  "subordinate legislation" has the same meaning as in the Interpretation Act 1978.

23 Duty on Secretary of State to publish reports

(1) The Secretary of State must publish a report in respect of each reporting period during the relevant period.

(2) The report must assess the economic impact on business activities of the qualifying regulatory provisions which have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period.

(3) The report must include—
- (a) a list of all the qualifying regulatory provisions which have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period,
- (b) an assessment of the economic impact on business activities of each of the qualifying regulatory provisions falling within paragraph (a) made by reference to the methodology published under section 21(3)(b) (but see section 24(2)),
- (c) an assessment of the aggregate economic impact on business activities of all of the qualifying regulatory provisions falling within paragraph (a),
- (d) if there have been preceding reporting periods during the relevant period, an assessment of the aggregate economic impact on business activities of all of the qualifying regulatory provisions which have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period in question and all of the preceding reporting periods,
- (e) an assessment of the contribution of the actions taken by each Government department to the aggregate economic impact mentioned in paragraphs (c) and (d), and
- (f) a list of all the regulatory provisions (as defined in section 22(3)) which have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period which do not fall within paragraph (a).

(4) The report must describe the actions taken by Government departments to mitigate any disproportionate economic impact on activities carried on by smaller scale businesses or voluntary or community bodies of regulatory provisions (as defined in section 22(3)) which have come into force during the reporting period.

(5) Subsection (6) applies in respect of regulatory provisions (as defined in section 22(3)) which—
- (a) have come into force during the reporting period, and
- (b) implement an EU obligation or any other international obligation of the United Kingdom.

(6) The report must include—
- (a) a description of any provision made in the provisions in question which goes beyond the minimum provision necessary for implementing the obligation, and
- (b) the reasons for that provision.

(7) Each of the following is a reporting period—
- (a) the period beginning with the relevant day and ending at the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the commencement of the Parliament,
- (b) the next successive period of 12 months,
- (c) the next successive period of 12 months,

(d) the next successive period of 12 months, and

(e) the period which begins at the end of the period mentioned in paragraph (d) and ends at the end of the relevant period.

(8) But subsection (9) applies if an early parliamentary general election is to take place in accordance with section 2 of the Fixed-term Parliaments Act 2011 during a reporting period mentioned in any of subsection (7)(b) to (d) (the "election reporting period").

(9) Subsection (7) has effect as if—

(a) any provision relating to the election reporting period and any subsequent reporting periods mentioned in paragraph (c) or (d) were omitted, and

(b) paragraph (e) referred to the period which begins at the beginning of the election reporting period and ends at the end of the relevant period.

(10) A report must be published—

(a) no later than one month after the end of the reporting period, if the report is in respect of a reporting period mentioned in any of subsection (7)(a) to (d);

(b) before the dissolution of Parliament, if the report is in respect of a reporting period mentioned in subsection (7)(e).

(11) Where a report is in respect of a reporting period mentioned in subsection (7)(e), the references to qualifying regulatory provisions or regulatory provisions which have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period include qualifying regulatory provisions or regulatory provisions which are expected to come into force or to cease to be in force during that reporting period.

(12) The Secretary of State must lay any report before Parliament.

24 Additional matters to be included in reports

(1) This section makes provision supplementary to section 23.

(2) An assessment in respect of a qualifying regulatory provision may be included in a report by virtue of section 23(3)(b) only if the assessment is verified by the body appointed under section 25.

(3) Subsection (4) applies if an assessment in respect of a qualifying regulatory provision is not included in a report in respect of a reporting period mentioned in any of section 23(7)(a) to (d) because of subsection (2) above.

(4) The report in respect of the immediately following reporting period must include an assessment of the economic impact on business activities of that qualifying regulatory provision.

(5) Subsection (6) applies to any report in respect of the reporting period mentioned in section 23(7)(c).

(6) The report must include an assessment of the extent to which the interim target has been met.

(7) Subsection (8) applies to any report in respect of the reporting period mentioned in section 23(7)(e).

(8) The report must include an assessment of the extent to which the business impact target has been met.

25 Appointment of body to verify assessments and lists in reports

(1) The Secretary of State must appoint an independent body to verify—
  (a) the assessment to be included in a report by virtue of section 23(3)(b), and
  (b) that all of the regulatory provisions in a list included in a report by virtue of section 23(3)(f) are regulatory provisions (as defined in section 22(3)) which—
    (i) have come into force or ceased to be in force during the reporting period in respect of which the report is made, and
    (ii) do not fall within section 23(3)(a).

(2) The body appointed under this section must publish a statement recording any verification made by virtue of subsection (1)(b).

(3) The appointment of the body must be made before the date on which a business impact target is published in relation to the relevant period.

(4) The appointment of the body must be for the duration of the relevant period.

(5) "Independent body" means a body which, in the opinion of the Secretary of State, is independent of the Secretary of State.

(6) The body appointed under this section must have expertise in assessing the likely economic impact of regulation on business activities (including activities carried on by smaller scale businesses or voluntary or community bodies).

(7) Subsection (1)(b) is to be read in accordance with section 23(11).

26 Amending the business impact target etc

(1) Before the end of the relevant period the Secretary of State may amend one or more of—
  (a) the business impact target;
  (b) the interim target;
  (c) the determination under section 22(2);
  (d) the methodology to be used for assessing the economic impact mentioned in section 21(1)(a).

(2) Section 21(6) applies when amending the thing mentioned in subsection (1)(a) or (c).

(3) If the Secretary of State amends any of the things mentioned in subsection (1) the Secretary of State must—
  (a) publish the thing as amended,
  (b) amend any report already published so that it takes account of any amendments, and
  (c) lay the thing as amended and any amended report before Parliament.

(4) The requirements in sections 23(2) and (3), 24 and 25(2) apply in relation to an amended report.

27 Sections 21 to 25 etc: interpretation

(1) This section applies for the purposes of sections 21 to 25 and this section.

(2) "Business activities" means any activities carried on—
  (a) by a business for the purposes of the business, or
  (b) by a voluntary or community body for the purposes of the body.

(3) References to a business or a voluntary or community body do not include a business or a voluntary or community body which—
  (a) is controlled by a public authority, or
  (b) is acting on behalf of a public authority in carrying out the activities.

(4) The Secretary of State must publish a statement as to how it is to be determined whether a business or a voluntary or community body is controlled by a public authority.

(5) Each of the following is a "voluntary or community body"—
  (a) a trade union;
  (b) an unincorporated body which does not distribute any surplus it makes to its members;
  (c) a charity;
  (d) a company limited by guarantee which does not distribute any surplus it makes to its members;
  (e) a registered society within the meaning given by section 1 of the Co-operative and Community Benefit Societies Act 2014;
  (f) a society registered or deemed to be registered under the Industrial and Provident Societies Act (Northern Ireland) 1969 (c. 24 (N.I.));
  (g) a community interest company;
  (h) a charitable incorporated organisation within the meaning of Part 11 of the Charities Act 2011 or within the meaning of the Charities Act (Northern Ireland) 2008 (c. 12 (N.I.));
  (i) a Scottish charitable incorporated organisation within the meaning of Chapter 7 of Part 1 of the Charities and Trustee Investment (Scotland) Act 2005 (asp 10).

(6) In this section—
  "public authority" has the same meaning as in the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (see section 3 of that Act); and
  "trade union" has the meaning given by section 1 of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 or Article 3 of the Industrial Relations (Northern Ireland) Order 1992 (S.I. 1992/807 (N.I. 5)).

Secondary legislation: duty to review

28 Duty to review regulatory provisions in secondary legislation

(1) This section applies where—
  (a) an Act confers a power or duty on a Minister of the Crown to make secondary legislation, and
  (b) the Minister exercises the power or duty so as to—
    (i) make regulatory provision in relation to any qualifying activity (see sections 29 and 32), or

(ii) amend regulatory provision made in relation to any qualifying activity.

(2) The Minister must—
(a) make provision for review in the secondary legislation in which the regulatory provision is made (see section 30), or
(b) publish a statement that it is not appropriate in the circumstances to make provision for review in that legislation (see section 31).

(3) This section does not apply if or to the extent that the power or duty is to be exercised so as to—
(a) make or amend—
(i) provision imposing, abolishing or varying any tax, duty, levy or other charge, or
(ii) provision in connection with provision falling within sub-paragraph (i);
(b) make or amend provision in connection with procurement;
(c) make or amend provision in connection with the giving of grants or other financial assistance by or on behalf of a public authority;
(d) make or amend provision which is to cease to have effect before the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the commencement date; or
(e) make or amend provision which is subject to review by virtue of existing provision in the secondary legislation.

(4) In this section and section 29 "public authority" has the same meaning as in the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (see section 3 of that Act).

29 Section 28(1)(b): interpretation

(1) This section applies for the purposes of section 28(1)(b).

(2) "Qualifying activity" means any activity carried on—
(a) by a business for the purposes of the business, or
(b) by a voluntary or community body for the purposes of the body.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (2) the references to a business or a voluntary or community body do not include a business or a voluntary or community body which—
(a) is controlled by a public authority, or
(b) is acting on behalf of a public authority in carrying out the activity.

(4) The Secretary of State must publish a statement as to how it is to be determined whether a business or a voluntary or community body is controlled by a public authority.

(5) "Voluntary or community body" has the meaning given in section 27.

30 Section 28(2)(a): "provision for review"

(1) This section applies for the purposes of section 28(2)(a).

(2) "Provision for review", in relation to any regulatory provision, is provision requiring the Minister to—
(a) carry out a review of the regulatory provision, and
(b) publish a report setting out the conclusions of the review.

(3) A review of any regulatory provision which implements an EU obligation or any other international obligation of the United Kingdom must have regard to how the obligation is implemented in the other Member States or countries which are subject to the obligation.

(4) A report must, in particular—
  (a) set out the objectives intended to be achieved by the regulatory provision,
  (b) assess the extent to which those objectives are achieved,
  (c) assess whether those objectives remain appropriate, and
  (d) if those objectives remain appropriate, assess the extent to which they could be achieved in another way which involves less onerous regulatory provision.

(5) The first report must be published before the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the commencement date.

(6) Subsequent reports must be published at intervals not exceeding 5 years.

31 Section 28(2)(b): appropriateness of making provision for review

(1) This section applies for the purposes of section 28(2)(b).

(2) The circumstances in which the Minister may determine that it is not appropriate to make provision for review include those in which—
  (a) a review would be disproportionate taking into account the economic impact of the regulatory provision on the qualifying activity, and
  (b) a review would be undesirable for particular policy reasons (such as there being an exceptionally high need for certainty in the longer term).

(3) The Secretary of State may publish guidance about the factors to be taken into account in determining whether it is appropriate to make provision for review.

(4) The Minister must have regard to any guidance.

32 Sections 28 to 31 etc: supplementary

(1) This section applies for the purposes of sections 28 to 31 and this section.

(2) "Commencement date" means the date on which the secondary legislation making or amending the regulatory provision comes into force for any purpose.

(3) "Minister of the Crown" has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975.

(4) "Regulatory provision", in relation to any qualifying activity, means—
  (a) provision imposing requirements, restrictions or conditions, or setting standards, in relation to the activity, or
  (b) provision which relates to the securing of compliance with, or the enforcement of, requirements, restrictions, conditions or standards which relate to the activity.

(5) But where any of section 30(2), (3), (4)(a) or 31(2) applies by virtue of section 28(1)(b)(ii), the references to regulatory provision are to the regulatory provision as amended by the secondary legislation made by the Minister.

(6) "Secondary legislation" means orders, regulations or rules made under any Act.

(7) The validity of any secondary legislation is not to be affected by any question as to whether a Minister of the Crown complied with section 28(2).

Definitions of small and micro business

33 Definitions of small and micro business

(1) This section applies where any subordinate legislation made by a Minister of the Crown (the "underlying provision")—
  (a) uses the term "small business" or "micro business", and
  (b) defines that term by reference to this section.

(2) In the underlying provision "small business" means an undertaking other than a micro business (see subsection (3)) which meets the following conditions ("the small business size conditions")—
  (a) it has a headcount of staff of less than 50, and
  (b) it has—
    (i) a turnover, or
    (ii) a balance sheet total,
  of an amount less than or equal to the small business threshold.

(3) In the underlying provision "micro business" means an undertaking which meets the following conditions ("the micro business size conditions")—
  (a) it has a headcount of staff of less than 10, and
  (b) it has—
    (i) a turnover, or
    (ii) a balance sheet total,
  of an amount less than or equal to the micro business threshold.

(4) The Secretary of State may by regulations (referred to as "the small and micro business regulations") make further provision about the meanings of "small business" and "micro business".

(5) This section and the small and micro business regulations are to be read subject to any modifications made by the underlying provision in any particular case.

(6) In this section—
  "balance sheet total", "headcount of staff", "micro business threshold", "small business threshold" and "turnover" have such meanings as may be prescribed by the small and micro business regulations;
  "Minister of the Crown" has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975;
  "subordinate legislation" has the same meaning as in the Interpretation Act 1978 (see section 21 of that Act);
  "undertaking" means—
    (a) a person carrying on one or more businesses;
    (b) a voluntary or community body within the meaning given by section 27;
    (c) a body which is formed or recognised under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom and which is

equivalent in nature to a body falling within the definition of voluntary or community body.

(7) The small and micro business regulations are subject to negative resolution procedure.

34 Small and micro business regulations: further provision

(1) The small and micro business regulations may make provision—
  (a) about the calculation of the headcount of staff, turnover and balance sheet total of an undertaking, including provision about the period ("assessment period") in respect of which they are to be calculated;
  (b) for the headcount of staff, turnover and balance sheet total, or a proportion of such, of any undertaking which satisfies such conditions as may be prescribed in relation to another undertaking (the "principal undertaking") to be treated as part of the principal undertaking's headcount of staff, turnover and balance sheet total.

(2) Conditions which may be prescribed under subsection (1)(b) include, in particular, conditions relating to—
  (a) the extent of ownership (whether direct or indirect) of one undertaking by one or more other undertakings;
  (b) the degree of control exercised (whether directly or indirectly) by one or more undertakings over another.

(3) The small and micro business regulations may make provision about—
  (a) the assessment period or periods in respect of which an undertaking must meet the small business size conditions or the micro business size conditions in order to be a small business or (as the case may be) micro business;
  (b) the circumstances in which an undertaking which has been established for less than a complete assessment period is to be regarded as meeting the small business size conditions or the micro business size conditions.

(4) Provision made by virtue of subsection (3) may, in particular, provide that—
  (a) an undertaking is a small business or a micro business if it meets the relevant size conditions in respect of each of its two most recent assessment periods;
  (b) where there has been only one complete assessment period since an undertaking was established, the undertaking is a small business or a micro business if it meets the relevant size conditions in respect of that period;
  (c) an undertaking which is a small business or a micro business does not cease to be such unless it fails to meet the relevant size conditions in respect of two consecutive assessment periods.

(5) The small and micro business regulations may make provision for one undertaking ("undertaking A") which satisfies such conditions as may be prescribed in relation to another undertaking ("undertaking B"), to be treated as being undertaking B (whether or not undertaking B is still in existence) for such purposes as may be prescribed.

(6) Conditions which may be prescribed under subsection (5) include, in particular, conditions relating to—
  (a) the transfer of a business from undertaking B to undertaking A;

(b) the carrying on by undertaking A of a business on undertaking B ceasing to carry on the activities, or most of the activities, of which the business consists in consequence of arrangements involving both undertakings;

(c) the existence of some other connection between undertaking A and undertaking B.

(7) The purposes which may be prescribed under subsection (5) include, in particular—

(a) determining the date on which undertaking A was established (and so the number of assessment periods there have been since it was established);

(b) determining which periods are assessment periods in respect of undertaking A;

(c) calculating the headcount of staff, turnover and balance sheet total of undertaking A.

(8) The small and micro business regulations may provide that an undertaking of such description as may be prescribed is not a small business or a micro business even if it falls within the relevant definition.

(9) In this section—

"micro business size conditions", "small business size conditions" and "undertaking" have the same meanings as in section 33;

"prescribed" means prescribed in the small and micro business regulations.

Home businesses

35 Exclusion of home businesses from Part 2 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954

(1) Part 2 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 (security of tenure for business, professional and other tenants) is amended as follows.

(2) In section 23(4) (tenancies to which Part 2 applies) at the beginning insert "Subject to subsection (5),".

(3) After section 23(4) insert—

"(5) Where the tenant's breach of a prohibition (however expressed) of use for business purposes which subsists under the terms of the tenancy and extends to the whole of that property consists solely of carrying on a home business, this Part of this Act does not apply to the tenancy, even if the immediate landlord or the immediate landlord's predecessor in title has consented to the breach or the immediate landlord has acquiesced in the breach.

(6) In subsection (5) "home business" has the same meaning as in section 43ZA."

(4) After section 43 (tenancies excluded from Part 2), insert—

"43ZA Further exclusion of home business tenancies from Part 2

(1) This Part of this Act does not apply to a home business tenancy.

(2) A home business tenancy is a tenancy under which—
  (a) a dwelling-house is let as a separate dwelling,
  (b) the tenant or, where there are joint tenants, each of them, is an individual, and
  (c) the terms of the tenancy—
    (i) require the tenant or, where there are joint tenants, at least one of them, to occupy the dwelling-house as a home (whether or not as that individual's only or principal home),
    (ii) permit a home business to be carried on in the dwelling-house, or permit the immediate landlord to give consent for a home business to be carried on in the dwelling-house, and
    (iii) do not permit a business other than a home business to be carried on in the dwelling-house.

(3) The terms of a tenancy permit the carrying on of a home business if they permit the carrying on of a particular home business, a particular description of home business or any home business.

(4) A "home business" is a business of a kind which might reasonably be carried on at home.

(5) A business is not to be treated as a home business if it involves the supply of alcohol for consumption on licensed premises which form all or part of the dwelling-house.

(6) The appropriate national authority may by regulations prescribe cases in which businesses are, or are not, to be treated as home businesses.

(7) Regulations under this section—
  (a) may include transitional or saving provision,
  (b) may make different provision for different purposes,
  (c) are to be made by statutory instrument,
  (d) may not be made unless—
    (i) in the case of regulations made by the Secretary of State, a draft of the statutory instrument containing the regulations has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament,
    (ii) in the case of regulations made by the Welsh Ministers, a draft of the statutory instrument containing the regulations has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the National Assembly for Wales.

(8) For the purposes of this section, a dwelling-house which is let for mixed residential and business use is capable of being let as a dwelling.

(9) If, under a tenancy, a dwelling-house is let together with other land, then, for the purposes of this section—
  (a) if the main purpose of the letting is the provision of a home for the tenant, the other land is to be treated as part of the dwelling-house, and
  (b) if the main purpose of the letting is not as mentioned in paragraph (a), the tenancy is to be treated as not being one under which a dwelling-house is let as a separate dwelling.

(10) In this section—

"the appropriate national authority" means—

(a) in relation to England, the Secretary of State, and

(b) in relation to Wales, the Welsh Ministers;

"dwelling-house" may be a house or part of a house;

"let" includes sub-let;

"licensed premises" has the same meaning as in the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 193 of that Act);

"supply of alcohol" has the same meaning as in the Licensing Act 2003 (see section 14 of that Act)."

(5) Subsections (1) to (4) do not apply to—

(a) a tenancy which is entered into before the day on which this section comes into force;

(b) a tenancy which is entered into on or after the day on which this section comes into force, pursuant to a contract made before that day;

(c) a tenancy which arises by operation of any enactment or other law when a tenancy mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) comes to an end.

36 Section 35: supplementary and consequential provision

(1) In section 41 of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954 (trusts), after subsection (2) insert—

"(3) Where a tenancy is held on trust, section 43ZA(2) has effect as if—

(a) paragraph (b) were omitted, and

(b) the condition in paragraph (c)(i) were a condition that the terms of the tenancy require at least one individual who is a trustee or a beneficiary under the trust to occupy the dwelling-house as a home (whether or not as that individual's only or principal home)."

(2) A dwelling-house which is let under a home business tenancy is to be regarded as being "let as a separate dwelling" for the purposes of—

(a) section 1 of the Rent Act 1977 (protected tenancies),

(b) section 79 of the Housing Act 1985 (secure tenancies),

(c) section 1 of the Housing Act 1988 (assured tenancies), and

(d) any other England and Wales enactment relating to protected, secure or assured tenancies.

(3) Subsections (1) and (2) do not apply to the tenancies mentioned in section 35(5).

(4) Subsections (2) and (3) do not limit the circumstances in which a dwelling-house which is let under a home business tenancy is to be regarded as "let as a separate dwelling".

(5) In this section—

"enactment" includes provision made—

(a) under an Act, or

(b) by or under a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales,

"England and Wales enactment" means any enactment so far as it forms part of the law of England and Wales,

"home business tenancy" has the same meaning as in section 43ZA of the Landlord and Tenant Act 1954.

CMA recommendations

37 CMA to publish recommendations on proposals for Westminster legislation

(1) Section 7 of the Enterprise Act 2002 (provision by CMA of information and advice to Ministers etc) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) The CMA may, in particular, carry out the function under subsection (1)(a) by making a proposal in the form of a recommendation to a Minister of the Crown about the potential effect of a proposal for Westminster legislation on competition within any market or markets in the United Kingdom for goods or services.

(1B) The CMA must publish such a recommendation in such manner as the CMA considers appropriate for bringing the subject matter of the recommendation to the attention of those likely to be affected by it."

(3) After subsection (2) insert—

"(3) In this section—

"market in the United Kingdom" includes—

(a) so far as it operates in the United Kingdom or a part of the United Kingdom, any market which operates there and in another country or territory or in a part of another country or territory; and

(b) any market which operates only in a part of the United Kingdom;

and the reference to a market for goods or services includes a reference to a market for goods and services; and

"Westminster legislation" means—

(a) an Act of Parliament, or

(b) subordinate legislation (within the meaning given by section 21 of the Interpretation Act 1978)."

Liability of bodies concerned with accounting standards

38 Exemption from liability for bodies concerned with accounting standards etc

(1) After section 18 of the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprise) Act 2004 insert—

"18A Power to confer exemption from liability

(1) The Secretary of State may by order or regulations provide for the exemption from liability in subsections (3) and (4) to apply to specified bodies or persons (referred to in this section as "exempt persons").

(2) The order or regulations may provide for the exemption to apply subject to specified conditions or for a specified period.

(3) Neither the exempt person, nor any person who is (or is acting as) a member, officer or member of staff of the exempt person, is to be liable in damages for anything done, or omitted to be done, for the purposes of or in connection with—

(a) the carrying on of those section 16(2) activities of the exempt person that are specified in relation to that person, or

(b) the purported carrying on of any such activities.

(4) Subsection (3) does not apply—

(a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith, or

(b) so as to prevent an award of damages in respect of the act or omission on the grounds that it was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998 (acts of public authorities incompatible with Convention rights).

(5) In this section—

"section 16(2) activities" means activities concerned with any of the matters within section 16(2);

"specified" means specified in an order or regulations under this section.

(6) Orders and regulations under this section—

(a) are to be made by statutory instrument;

(b) may make different provision for different cases;

(c) may make transitional provision and savings.

(7) A statutory instrument containing an order or regulations under this section is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament, subject to subsection (8).

(8) An order or regulations under this section may be included in a statutory instrument which may not be made unless a draft of the instrument is laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament."

(2) Omit section 18 of that Act (exemption from liability for bodies to whom grants are paid).

(3) In section 66(2) of that Act (provisions extending to Northern Ireland) for "18" substitute "18A".

PART 3

PUBLIC SECTOR PROCUREMENT

39 Regulations about procurement

(1) The Minister for the Cabinet Office or the Secretary of State may by regulations impose on a contracting authority duties in respect of the exercise of its functions relating to procurement.

(2) For the purposes of this section "the exercise of functions relating to procurement" includes the exercise of functions in preparation for entering into contracts and in the management of contracts.

(3) Subject to subsection (4), "contracting authority" has the same meaning as in regulation 2 of the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/102), or any regulation replacing that regulation, as from time to time amended.

(4) But such an authority is not a contracting authority for the purposes of this section if its functions are wholly or mainly devolved functions, namely—

(a) Scottish devolved functions, that is to say functions the exercise of which would be within devolved competence (within the meaning of section 54 of the Scotland Act 1998);

(b) Northern Ireland devolved functions, that is to say functions which could be conferred by provision included in an Act of the Northern Ireland Assembly made without the consent of the Secretary of State (see sections 6 to 8 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998), or

(c) Welsh devolved functions, that is to say functions which could be conferred by provision falling within the legislative competence of the National Assembly for Wales (as defined in section 108 of the Government of Wales Act 2006).

(5) Regulations under this section may, in particular, impose—

(a) duties to exercise functions relating to procurement in an efficient and timely manner;

(b) duties relating to the process by which contracts are entered into (including timescales and the extent and manner of engagement with potential parties to a contract);

(c) duties to make available without charge—

(i) information or documents;

(ii) any process required to be completed in order to bid for a contract;

(d) duties relating to the acceptance of invoices by electronic means (including a prohibition on the charging of fees for processing such invoices, the publication of reports relating to the number of such invoices received or the electronic systems that must be used by a contracting authority);

(e) duties to publish reports about compliance with the regulations.

(6) A person making regulations under this section must before making the regulations undertake such consultation as the person considers appropriate.

(7) The Minister for the Cabinet Office or the Secretary of State may issue guidance relating to regulations under this section.

(8) A contracting authority must have regard to any guidance for the time being in force under this section.

(9) Guidance or revised guidance given under this section must be published.

(10) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

40 Investigation of procurement functions

(1) In this section "a Minister" means the Minister for the Cabinet Office or the Secretary of State.

(2) A Minister may investigate the exercise by a contracting authority of relevant functions relating to procurement.

(3) A Minister may by notice require a contracting authority to provide such documents or other information, in such form or manner as the Minister may direct, as the Minister may require for the purposes of an investigation under this section.

(4) A contracting authority must—
  (a) give a Minister such assistance with an investigation as is reasonable in all the circumstances of the case;
  (b) comply with a notice under subsection (3) before the end of the period of 30 days beginning with the day on which the notice is given.

(5) In this section—
  "contracting authority" has the same meaning as in section 39, but does not include a Minister of the Crown or a government department;
  "a relevant function relating to procurement" is a function to which—
    (a) the Public Contracts Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/5) apply, disregarding for this purpose the operation of regulation 8 (thresholds),
    (b) the Defence and Security Public Contracts Regulations 2011 (S.I. 2011/1848) apply, disregarding for this purpose the operation of regulation 9 (thresholds),
    (c) the Public Contracts (Scotland) Regulations 2012 (S.S.I. 2012/88) apply, disregarding for this purpose the operation of regulation 8 (thresholds), or
    (d) the Public Contracts Regulations 2015 (S.I. 2015/102) apply, disregarding for this purpose the operation of any financial threshold provided for by those regulations;
  a reference to regulations includes a reference to any regulations replacing those regulations, as from time to time amended.

(6) An investigation under this section may also include an investigation of—
  (a) preparations for the exercise of a relevant function relating to procurement, and
  (b) the management of a contract entered into in the exercise of such a function.

(7) But the exercise of a function—
  (a) by—
    (i) the governing body of a maintained school (see section 19 of the of the Education Act 2002), or
    (ii) a person who is the proprietor of an Academy (see section 17(4) of the Academies Act 2010 and section 579(1) of the Education Act 1996), or
  (b) which is regulated by the National Health Service (Procurement, Patient Choice and Competition) (No. 2) Regulations 2013 (S.I. 2013/500) (functions relating to the procurement of health care services for the purposes of the NHS),

may not be investigated under this section.

(8) A person conducting an investigation under this section may publish the results of the investigation.

PART 4

THE PUBS CODE ADJUDICATOR AND THE PUBS CODE

The Pubs Code Adjudicator

41 The Adjudicator

(1) A Pubs Code Adjudicator is established.

(2) Part 1 of Schedule 1 makes provision about the Adjudicator.

(3) Part 2 of that Schedule contains the Adjudicator's powers to require information.

(4) Part 3 of that Schedule contains amendments consequential on the establishment of the Adjudicator.

Pubs Code

42 Pubs Code

(1) The Secretary of State must, before the end of the period of one year beginning with the day on which this section comes into force, make regulations about practices and procedures to be followed by pub-owning businesses in their dealings with their tied pub tenants.

(2) In this Part the regulations are referred to as "the Pubs Code".

(3) The Secretary of State must seek to ensure that the Pubs Code is consistent with—
  (a) the principle of fair and lawful dealing by pub-owning businesses in relation to their tied pub tenants;
  (b) the principle that tied pub tenants should not be worse off than they would be if they were not subject to any product or service tie.

(4) The Pubs Code may, in particular—
  (a) contain requirements as to the provision of information by pub-owning businesses to their tied pub tenants;
  (b) require pub-owning businesses, in specified circumstances, to provide the following assessments in relation to their tied pub tenants—
    (i) rent assessments, or
    (ii) assessments of money payable by the tenant in lieu of rent;
  (c) make provision about the information that such assessments must contain and how they are to be calculated and presented;
  (d) specify that such assessments must be conducted in accordance with provisions of documents specified in the Pubs Code;
  (e) where any document is specified for the purposes of paragraph (d), refer to the provisions of the document as amended from time to time;
  (f) impose other obligations on pub-owning businesses in relation to their tied pub tenants.

(5) The Pubs Code may require pub-owning businesses to provide parallel rent assessments in relation to their tied pub tenants in specified circumstances, and in connection with such provision may —
  (a) confer on the Adjudicator functions in relation to parallel rent assessments,
  (b) require the payment of a fee by tied pub tenants to the Adjudicator in connection with the exercise of those functions, and
  (c) make provision corresponding to that mentioned in subsection (4)(c), (d) and (e).

43 Pubs Code: market rent only option

(1) The Pubs Code must require pub-owning businesses to offer their tied pub tenants falling within section 70(1)(a) a market rent only option in specified circumstances.

(2) A "market rent only option" means the option for the tied pub tenant—
  (a) to occupy the tied pub under a tenancy or licence which is MRO-compliant, and
  (b) to pay in respect of that occupation—
    (i) such rent as may be agreed between the pub-owning business and the tied pub tenant in accordance with the MRO procedure (see section 44), or
    (ii) failing such agreement, the market rent.

(3) The Pubs Code may specify—
  (a) circumstances in which a market rent only option must or may be an option to occupy under a tenancy;
  (b) circumstances in which a market rent only option must or may be an option to occupy under a licence.

(4) A tenancy or licence is MRO-compliant if—
  (a) taken together with any other contractual agreement entered into by the tied pub tenant with the pub-owning business in connection with the tenancy or licence it—
    (i) contains such terms and conditions as may be required by virtue of subsection (5)(a),
    (ii) does not contain any product or service tie other than one in respect of insurance in connection with the tied pub, and
    (iii) does not contain any unreasonable terms or conditions, and
  (b) it is not a tenancy at will.

(5) The Pubs Code may specify descriptions of terms and conditions—
  (a) which are required to be contained in a tenancy or licence for it to be MRO-compliant;
  (b) which are to be regarded as reasonable or unreasonable for the purposes of subsection (4).

(6) Provision made under subsection (1) must include provision requiring a pub-owning business to offer a tied pub tenant a market rent only option—
  (a) in connection with the renewal of any of the pub arrangements;
  (b) in connection with a rent assessment or assessment of money payable by the tenant in lieu of rent;

(c) in connection with a significant increase in the price at which any product or service which is subject to a product or service tie is supplied to the tied pub tenant where the increase was not reasonably foreseeable—
  (i) when the tenancy or licence was granted, or
  (ii) if there has been an assessment of a kind mentioned in paragraph (b), when the last assessment was concluded;
(d) after a trigger event has occurred.

(7) The Pubs Code may specify what "renewal" means in relation to a tenancy or a licence for the purposes of subsection (6).

(8) In subsection (6) "pub arrangements", in relation to a tied pub, means—
  (a) the tenancy or licence under which the tied pub is occupied, and
  (b) any other contractual agreement which contains an obligation by virtue of which condition D in section 68 is met in relation to the premises.

(9) In this Part a "trigger event", in relation to a tied pub tenant, means an event which—
  (a) is beyond the control of the tied pub tenant,
  (b) was not reasonably foreseeable as mentioned in subsection (6)(c),
  (c) has a significant impact on the level of trade that could reasonably be expected to be achieved at the tied pub, and
  (d) is of a description specified in the Pubs Code.

(10) In this Part "market rent", in relation to the occupation of particular premises under a tenancy or licence which is MRO-compliant, means the estimated rent which it would be reasonable to pay in respect of that occupation on the following assumptions—
  (a) that the tenancy or licence concerned is entered into—
    (i) on the date on which the determination of the estimated rent is made,
    (ii) in an arm's length transaction,
    (iii) after proper marketing, and
    (iv) between parties each of whom has acted knowledgeably, prudently and willingly, and
  (b) that condition B in section 68 continues to be met.

44 Market rent only option: procedure

(1) The Pubs Code may—
  (a) make provision about the procedure to be followed in connection with an offer of a market rent only option (referred to in this Part as "the MRO procedure");
  (b) confer functions on the Adjudicator in connection with that procedure.

(2) Provision made under subsection (1) may, in particular—
  (a) make provision for the tied pub tenant to give notice to the pub-owning business that the tenant—
    (i) considers that circumstances are such that the pub-owning business is required to offer the tenant a market rent only option, and
    (ii) wishes to receive such an offer;

(b) specify a reasonable period ("the negotiation period") during which the pub-owning business and the tied pub tenant may seek to agree the rent to be payable in respect of the tied pub tenant's occupation of the premises concerned under the proposed MRO-compliant tenancy or licence;

(c) require the appointment of a person (referred to in this Part as an "independent assessor") to determine the market rent of the premises concerned in a case where, at the end of the negotiation period, the pub-owning business and the tied pub tenant have not reached agreement as mentioned in paragraph (b);

(d) require that appointment to be made by the pub-owning business and the tied pub tenant acting jointly or (where they cannot agree on a person to appoint) by the Adjudicator;

(e) require the Adjudicator to set criteria which a person must satisfy in order to be appointed as an independent assessor;

(f) require that the market rent must be determined by the independent assessor within a specified reasonable period;

(g) specify that the determination of the market rent by the independent assessor must be conducted in accordance with provisions of documents specified in the Pubs Code;

(h) where any document is specified for the purposes of paragraph (g), refer to the provisions of the document as amended from time to time.

(3) The Pubs Code may make provision for—

(a) the tenancy or licence under which the tied pub is occupied, and

(b) any other contractual agreement entered into by the tied pub tenant with the pub-owning business in connection with the tenancy or licence,

as they are in force when a notice is given by virtue of subsection (2)(a), to continue to have effect until such time as the MRO procedure has come to an end (regardless of whether any of the agreements would or could otherwise cease to have effect before that time).

(4) The Pubs Code may, for the purposes of subsection (3), specify the circumstances in which the MRO procedure is to be treated as having come to an end.

45 Market rent only option: disputes

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations confer functions on the Adjudicator in connection with the resolution of disputes relating to the offer of a market rent only option.

(2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision concerning the resolution of disputes about whether—

(a) circumstances are such that a pub-owning business is required to offer a tied pub tenant a market rent only option;

(b) a proposed tenancy or licence is MRO-compliant;

(c) a determination of the market rent of a tenancy or licence made by an independent assessor has been made in accordance with the Pubs Code;

(d) any other requirement of the MRO procedure has been complied with.

(3) The regulations may, in particular, confer on the Adjudicator the function of determining the market rent of a tenancy or licence in such circumstances as may be specified in the regulations.

(4) Nothing in sections 48 to 52 applies in relation to provision made by virtue of section 43 or 44 but the regulations may include provision which is similar to that contained in or made under those sections.

46 Review of Pubs Code

(1) The Secretary of State must review the operation of the Pubs Code for each review period.

(2) The first review period is the period beginning on the date on which the Pubs Code comes into force and ending 2 years after the following 31 March.

(3) Subsequent review periods are each successive period of 3 years after the first review period.

(4) As soon as practicable after a review period, the Secretary of State must—
  (a) publish a report of the findings of the review for that period, and
  (b) lay a copy of the report before Parliament.

(5) In particular, the report must set out—
  (a) the extent to which, in the Secretary of State's opinion, the Pubs Code is consistent with the principles set out in section 42(3), and
  (b) any revisions of the Pubs Code which, in the Secretary of State's opinion, would enable the Pubs Code to reflect more fully those principles.

47 Inconsistency with Pubs Code etc

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about terms of a tenancy or other agreement between a pub-owning business and a tied pub tenant—
  (a) which are inconsistent with the Pubs Code,
  (b) which purport to penalise the tenant for requiring the business to act, or not act, in accordance with any provision of the Pubs Code with which the business is bound to comply,
  (c) which purport to provide that a rent assessment or assessment of money payable by the tenant in lieu of rent in relation to the tied pub—
    (i) may be initiated only by the business, or
    (ii) may only determine that the rent or money payable in lieu of rent is to be increased.

(2) The regulations may include provision about the effect of a term of a tenancy or other agreement being void or unenforceable as a result of the regulations.

(3) Regulations under subsection (1) may make provision about terms of tenancies or other agreements entered into before the date on which the regulations come into force.

(4) A term of any agreement between a pub-owning business and a tied pub tenant is void to the extent that it purports to—

(a) prevent the tenant from referring a dispute to the Adjudicator for arbitration in accordance with regulations under section 45 or in accordance with section 48, or
(b) penalise the tenant for making such a referral.

(5) A term of an arbitration agreement between a pub-owning business and a tied pub tenant is unenforceable to the extent that it is inconsistent with—
(a) regulations under section 45,
(b) section 50,
(c) section 51, or
(d) regulations under section 51(7).

(6) Subsections (4) and (5) apply to agreements entered into before the date on which those subsections come into force, as well as those entered into on or after that date.

(7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the effect of a term of an agreement being void or unenforceable as a result of subsection (4) or (5).

Arbitration by Adjudicator

48 Referral for arbitration by tied pub tenants

(1) In accordance with the following provisions of this section and section 49, a tied pub tenant may refer a dispute between the tenant and the pub-owning business concerned to the Adjudicator for arbitration.

(2) If the Pubs Code specifies that particular provisions of the Pubs Code are arbitrable, a dispute may be referred to the Adjudicator only to the extent that it relates to an allegation by the tenant that the pub-owning business has failed to comply with an arbitrable provision of the Pubs Code.

(3) If the Pubs Code specifies that particular provisions of the Pubs Code are not arbitrable, a dispute may be referred to the Adjudicator only to the extent that it relates to an allegation by the tenant that the pub-owning business has failed to comply with any other provision of the Pubs Code.

(4) If the Pubs Code does not specify whether any of its provisions are arbitrable or not arbitrable, a dispute may be referred to the Adjudicator only to the extent that it relates to an allegation by the tenant that the pub-owning business has failed to comply with any provision of the Pubs Code.

(5) Where a dispute is referred for arbitration under this section, the Adjudicator must either—
(a) arbitrate the dispute, or
(b) appoint another person to arbitrate the dispute.

49 Timing of referral for arbitration by tied pub tenants

(1) This section makes provision as to the period within which a tied pub tenant may refer a dispute to the Adjudicator in accordance with section 48.

(2) Except in the case mentioned in subsection (3), the dispute may not be referred until after the expiry of the period of 21 days beginning with the date on which the tenant notifies the pub-owning business of the alleged non-compliance.

(3) Where the Pubs Code requires a pub-owning business to provide a parallel rent assessment within a period of time specified by the Adjudicator, a dispute which relates to an allegation that the pub-owning business has failed to comply with that requirement may not be referred until the day after the day on which the specified period ends.

(4) In all cases, a dispute may not be referred after the expiry of the period of 4 months beginning with the first date on which the dispute could have been referred.

50 Arbitration commenced by pub-owning businesses

(1) This section applies where—
  (a) there is an arbitration agreement between a tied pub tenant and a pub-owning business, and
  (b) the business commences arbitral proceedings about a matter which is, or which includes, a Pubs Code dispute between the business and the tenant.

(2) In this section a "Pubs Code dispute" means a dispute—
  (a) which relates to an allegation by the tied pub tenant that the pub-owning business has failed to comply with a provision of the Pubs Code, and
  (b) which the tenant would have been able to refer for arbitration by the Adjudicator in accordance with section 48 (were it not for the commencement of arbitral proceedings by the business).

(3) Subsection (4) applies where—
  (a) in accordance with the arbitration agreement, the Adjudicator is appointed to arbitrate the Pubs Code dispute, or
  (b) the tied pub tenant wishes the Adjudicator to be appointed to arbitrate that dispute, and has given notice to that effect in accordance with subsections (5) to (7).

(4) The Adjudicator must either—
  (a) arbitrate the Pubs Code dispute, or
  (b) appoint another person to arbitrate that dispute.

(5) Notice under subsection (3)(b) must be given in writing to—
  (a) the pub-owning business, and
  (b) the Adjudicator.

(6) In a case where the arbitration agreement provides for the arbitrator to be appointed by a person other than the pub-owning business or the tied pub tenant, notice under subsection (3)(b) must be given within 21 days beginning with the date on which that person notifies the tenant of the person proposed to be appointed as arbitrator.

(7) In any other case, notice under subsection (3)(b) must be given within 21 days beginning with the date on which arbitral proceedings commenced.

(8) Section 14 of the Arbitration Act 1996 makes provision about the commencement of arbitral proceedings.

51 Arbitration: supplementary

(1) Subsection (2) applies where a tied pub tenant—
  (a) refers a dispute to the Adjudicator under section 48, or
  (b) gives notice as mentioned in section 50(3)(b) that the tenant wishes the Adjudicator to be appointed to arbitrate a dispute.

(2) The tenant must pay a fee to the Adjudicator of an amount prescribed in regulations made by the Secretary of State (except in specified cases as mentioned in subsection (3)(b)).

(3) The regulations may make further provision as to the fee, and may in particular—
  (a) specify when the fee must be paid,
  (b) specify cases in which the tenant is not required to pay the fee,
  (c) specify cases in which the fee is to be refunded to the tenant.

(4) The following subsections apply in all cases where the Adjudicator or a person appointed by the Adjudicator arbitrates a dispute.

(5) Except where this Part makes different provision, the arbitration must be conducted in accordance with—
  (a) the rules regarding arbitrations issued from time to time by the Chartered Institute of Arbitrators, or
  (b) the rules of another dispute resolution body nominated by the arbitrator.

(6) The pub-owning business concerned must pay the reasonable fees and expenses of the arbitrator in respect of the arbitration, except where—
  (a) the arbitration follows a referral by the tenant under section 48, and
  (b) the arbitrator concludes that the referral was vexatious.

(7) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision in relation to the costs payable by a tied pub tenant in respect of the arbitration, and the regulations may in particular—
  (a) provide that those costs are limited to an amount prescribed in, or to be determined in accordance with, the regulations, and
  (b) specify circumstances in which the arbitrator may make an award requiring the tenant to pay costs exceeding that amount.

52 Information about arbitration

(1) If the Adjudicator appoints another person as arbitrator under section 48(5)(b) or 50(4)(b), the Adjudicator may require the arbitrator, or the pub-owning business and tied pub tenant concerned, to provide information to assist the Adjudicator in carrying out functions under this Part.

(2) The Adjudicator may enforce the requirement to provide information by bringing civil proceedings to obtain an injunction.

Investigations by Adjudicator

53 Investigations

(1) The Adjudicator may investigate whether a pub-owning business has failed to comply with the Pubs Code if the Adjudicator has reasonable grounds to suspect that—
  (a) the business has failed to comply with the Pubs Code, or
  (b) the business has failed to follow a recommendation made under section 56.

(2) The Adjudicator may not carry out an investigation until the guidance required by section 61(1) has been published.

54 Investigation reports

(1) Following an investigation, the Adjudicator must—
  (a) publish a report on the outcome of the investigation, and
  (b) consider whether to use any of the enforcement powers mentioned in section 55.

(2) An investigation report must, in particular, specify—
  (a) any findings that the Adjudicator has made,
  (b) any action that the Adjudicator has taken or proposes to take, and
  (c) the reasons for the findings and any action taken or proposed.

(3) An investigation report need not identify the pub-owning business concerned.

(4) If a pub-owning business is identified in a report, the business must have been given a reasonable opportunity to comment on a draft of the report before publication.

55 Forms of enforcement

(1) If, as a result of an investigation, the Adjudicator is satisfied that a pub-owning business has failed to comply with the Pubs Code, or has failed to follow a recommendation made under section 56, the Adjudicator may take one or more of the following enforcement measures—
  (a) make recommendations;
  (b) require information to be published;
  (c) impose financial penalties.

(2) Where an investigation concerns two or more pub-owning businesses, the Adjudicator may decide—
  (a) to take different enforcement measures against different businesses,
  (b) not to take any enforcement measures against one or more of the businesses.

56 Recommendations

(1) If the Adjudicator chooses to enforce through making recommendations, that means recommending what the pub-owning business should do in order to comply with the Pubs Code, and specifying the time by which the business should do it.

(2) The Adjudicator must monitor whether a recommendation has been followed.

57 Requirements to publish information

(1) If the Adjudicator chooses to enforce through requiring information to be published, that means requiring the pub-owning business to publish information relating to the investigation.

(2) The publication requirement is imposed by giving the pub-owning business written notice specifying—
  (a) what information is to be published,
  (b) how it must be published, and
  (c) the time by which it must be published.

(3) The Adjudicator may enforce the requirement to publish information by bringing civil proceedings to obtain an injunction or any other appropriate remedy or relief.

58 Financial penalties

(1) If the Adjudicator chooses to enforce through imposing financial penalties, that means imposing a penalty on the pub-owning business of an amount not exceeding the permitted maximum (see subsection (6)).

(2) The financial penalty is imposed by giving the pub-owning business written notice specifying—
  (a) the grounds for imposing the penalty,
  (b) the amount of the penalty,
  (c) the period within which it must be paid, and
  (d) how it must be paid.

(3) The pub-owning business may appeal to the High Court against—
  (a) the imposition of a financial penalty, or
  (b) its amount.

(4) Financial penalties under this section are recoverable by the Adjudicator as a debt.

(5) Financial penalties received by the Adjudicator must be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

(6) The Secretary of State must make regulations—
  (a) specifying the permitted maximum, or
  (b) specifying how the permitted maximum is to be determined.

59 Recovery of investigation costs

(1) The Adjudicator may require a pub-owning business to pay some or all of the costs of an investigation (including any costs incurred in exercising the enforcement powers) if satisfied that—
  (a) the business has failed to comply with the Pubs Code, or
  (b) the business has failed to follow a recommendation made under section 56.

(2) The Adjudicator may require a person to pay some or all of the costs of an investigation if—
  (a) the Adjudicator carried out the investigation as a result of a complaint by the person, and
  (b) the Adjudicator is satisfied that the complaint was vexatious or wholly without merit.

(3) A requirement to pay costs is imposed by giving written notice specifying—
  (a) the grounds for imposing the requirement to pay costs,
  (b) how much is to be paid,
  (c) by when the costs are to be paid, and
  (d) how they are to be paid.

(4) A person required to pay costs under this section may appeal to the High Court against—
  (a) the imposition of the requirement, or
  (b) the amount to which it relates.

(5) Costs required to be paid under this section are recoverable by the Adjudicator as a debt.

Advice and guidance by Adjudicator

60 Advice

The Adjudicator may give advice on any matter relating to the Pubs Code to—
  (a) tied pub tenants,
  (b) any organisation representing the interests of tied pub tenants,
  (c) pub-owning businesses,
  (d) any organisation representing the interests of pub-owning businesses.

61 Guidance

(1) The Adjudicator must publish guidance about—
  (a) the criteria that the Adjudicator intends to adopt in deciding whether to carry out investigations,
  (b) the practices and procedures that the Adjudicator intends to adopt in carrying out investigations,
  (c) the criteria that the Adjudicator intends to adopt in choosing whether to use the enforcement powers and which ones, and
  (d) the criteria that the Adjudicator intends to adopt in deciding the amount of any financial penalty under section 58.

(2) In addition, the Adjudicator may publish guidance about the practices and procedures that the Adjudicator intends to adopt in carrying out other functions.

(3) The Adjudicator may publish guidance about—
  (a) the application of any provision of the Pubs Code;
  (b) steps that pub-owning businesses need to take in order to comply with the Pubs Code;
  (c) any other matter relating to the Pubs Code.

(4) Before publishing guidance under this section, the Adjudicator must consult any persons the Adjudicator thinks appropriate.

(5) The Adjudicator must publish the first guidance under subsection (1)(a), (b), (c) and (d) within 6 months beginning with the day on which section 41 comes into force.

(6) Where there is any guidance in force under this section, the Adjudicator must take account of it in carrying out functions.

Adjudicator's reporting requirements

62 Annual report

(1) After the end of each reporting period, the Adjudicator must prepare and publish a report describing what the Adjudicator has done during the period.

(2) The report must include a summary of—
  (a) arbitrations conducted by the Adjudicator,
  (b) investigations carried out by the Adjudicator,
  (c) cases in which the Adjudicator has taken the enforcement measures mentioned in section 55, and
  (d) cases in which the Adjudicator has exercised functions in relation to the offer of a market rent only option or the provision of parallel rent assessments.

(3) If the Adjudicator has made recommendations under section 56, the report must include an assessment of whether they have been followed.

(4) As well as publishing the report, the Adjudicator must send a copy to the Secretary of State.

(5) The Secretary of State must lay a copy of the report before Parliament.

(6) In this section "reporting period" means—
  (a) the period beginning with the day on which section 41 comes into force and ending with the following 31 March, and
  (b) each successive period of 12 months.

Funding of Adjudicator

63 Levy funding

(1) The Adjudicator may require pub-owning businesses to pay in each financial year a levy towards the Adjudicator's expenses.

(2) Before imposing a levy, the Adjudicator must obtain the Secretary of State's consent.

(3) In deciding the amount of a levy, the Adjudicator must take into account any sums received or expected to be received from other sources.

(4) The Adjudicator may take into account estimated as well as actual expenses.

(5) The Adjudicator may require different pub-owning businesses or different descriptions of pub-owning businesses to pay different amounts of levy, but

any differences must be based on criteria broadly intended to reflect the expense and time that the Adjudicator expects to spend in dealing with matters relating to different pub-owning businesses.

(6) The Adjudicator must inform each pub-owning business of—
  (a) the amount of any levy payable by the business,
  (b) when payments are due, and
  (c) how the levy is to be paid.

(7) A levy required to be paid under this section is recoverable by the Adjudicator as a debt.

(8) The Adjudicator must publish details of levies and an explanation of how the amounts have been decided (including any criteria under subsection (5)).

(9) If the Adjudicator has a surplus, the Adjudicator may repay some or all of it to pub-owning businesses.

(10) In subsection (9) "surplus" means money held by the Adjudicator at the end of a financial year less liabilities shown in the Adjudicator's statement of accounts for that financial year.

64 Loans by Secretary of State

The Secretary of State may make loans to the Adjudicator.

Supervision of Adjudicator

65 Review of Adjudicator and guidance from Secretary of State

(1) The Secretary of State must review the Adjudicator's performance for each review period.

(2) The first review period is the period beginning on the day on which section 41 comes into force and ending 2 years after the following 31 March.

(3) Subsequent review periods are each successive period of 3 years after the first review period.

(4) A review must, in particular, assess how effective the Adjudicator has been in enforcing the Pubs Code.

(5) A review may consider whether it would be desirable to amend or replace any regulations for the time being in force under section 51(2) or (7) or 58(6).

(6) As soon as practicable after a review period, the Secretary of State must—
  (a) publish a report of the findings of the review for that period, and
  (b) lay a copy of the report before Parliament.

(7) As a result of the findings of a review, the Secretary of State may give guidance to the Adjudicator about any matter relating to the Adjudicator's functions.

(8) The Adjudicator must take account of the guidance in carrying out functions.

66 Abolition of Adjudicator

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations abolish the Adjudicator—

(a) if, as a result of the findings of a review, the Secretary of State is satisfied that the Adjudicator has not been sufficiently effective in securing compliance with the Pubs Code to justify the continued existence of an Adjudicator,

(b) if, as a result of the findings of a review, the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is no longer necessary for there to be an Adjudicator to secure compliance with the Pubs Code, or

(c) if the Pubs Code is revoked and not replaced.

(2) The regulations may include provision transferring the Adjudicator's property, rights and liabilities.

(3) For the purpose of giving effect to the abolition of the Adjudicator, the regulations may amend or repeal this Part or any other enactment, including an enactment comprised in subordinate legislation within the meaning of the Interpretation Act 1978.

67 Information to Secretary of State

The Secretary of State may require the Adjudicator to provide information to assist the Secretary of State in carrying out functions under this Part.

Supplementary

68 "Tied pub"

(1) In this Part a "tied pub" means premises in relation to which conditions A to D are met.

(2) Condition A is that the premises have a premises licence authorising the retail sale of alcohol for consumption on the premises.

(3) Condition B is that the main activity or one of the main activities carried on at the premises is the retail sale of alcohol to members of the public for consumption on the premises.

(4) Condition C is that the premises are occupied under a tenancy or licence.

(5) Condition D is that the tenant or licensee of the premises is subject to a contractual obligation that some or all of the alcohol to be sold at the premises is supplied by—

(a) the landlord or a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord, or

(b) a person nominated by the landlord or by a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord.

(6) But condition D is not met if the contractual obligation is a stocking requirement.

(7) The contractual obligation is a stocking requirement if—

(a) it relates only to beer or cider (or both) produced by the landlord or by a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord,

(b) it does not require the tied pub tenant to procure the beer or cider from any particular supplier, and

(c) it does not prevent the tied pub tenant from selling at the premises beer or cider produced by a person not mentioned in paragraph (a) (whether or not it restricts such sales).

(8) In subsection (7), "beer" and "cider" have the same meanings as in the Alcoholic Liquor Duties Act 1979 (see section 1 of that Act).

(9) In this section—

"alcohol" has the meaning given by section 191 of the Licensing Act 2003;

"premises licence" has the same meaning as in that Act.

69 "Pub-owning business"

(1) A person is a "pub-owning business" for the purposes of this Part—

(a) in the period beginning with the day on which the Pubs Code comes into force and ending with the following 31 March, if immediately before the Pubs Code comes into force the person was the landlord of 500 or more tied pubs;

(b) in any subsequent financial year, if for a period of at least 6 months in the previous financial year the person was the landlord of 500 or more tied pubs.

(2) For the purposes of calculating the number of tied pubs of which a person ("L") is the landlord, any tied pub the landlord of which is a person who is a group undertaking in relation to L is treated as a tied pub of which L is the landlord.

(3) A person not falling within subsection (1) and who is the landlord of a tied pub occupied by a tied pub tenant who has extended protection in relation to that tied pub is also a pub-owning business for the purposes of this Part in relation to that occupation.

(4) A tied pub tenant has "extended protection in relation to a tied pub" if—

(a) the tenant occupies the tied pub under a tenancy or licence at a time when the landlord is a person who is a pub-owning business by virtue of subsection (1), and

(b) before the end of that tenancy or licence the landlord is no longer such a person (whether because of a transfer of title or because the landlord ceases to fall within subsection (1)).

(5) But a tied pub tenant ceases to have "extended protection in relation to a tied pub" on the earlier of—

(a) the end of the tenancy or licence concerned, and

(b) the conclusion of the first rent assessment or assessment of money payable in lieu of rent to be provided after the landlord is no longer a person who is a pub-owning business by virtue of subsection (1).

(6) The Secretary of State may for the purposes of subsections (4) and (5) by regulations specify—

(a) when a tenancy or licence ends;

(b) when a rent assessment or assessment of money payable in lieu of rent is concluded.

(7) Nothing in sections 43 to 45 and sections 53 to 59 has effect in relation to a person who is a pub-owning business by virtue of subsection (3).

(8) The Secretary of State may by regulations specify circumstances in which a person who is a group undertaking in relation to a pub-owning business—
  (a) is to be treated, or
  (b) may if the Adjudicator so determines be treated,
as a pub-owning business (as well as or instead of any other person) for the purposes of any provision of or made under this Part.

(9) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
  (a) amend subsection (1)(a) or (b) so as to substitute a different number of tied pubs, or a different period, from the number or period for the time being specified there,
  (b) make provision in relation to the calculation of the number of tied pubs, whether by amending subsection (2) or otherwise.

70 "Tied pub tenant", "landlord", "tenancy" and "licence"

(1) In this Part a "tied pub tenant" means a person—
  (a) who is the tenant or licensee of a tied pub, or
  (b) who is a party to negotiations relating to the prospective tenancy of or licence to occupy premises which are, or on completion of the negotiations are expected to be, a tied pub.

(2) In this Part—
  "landlord" means—
    (a) in relation to a tied pub occupied under a tenancy, the immediate landlord, or
    (b) in relation to a tied pub occupied under a licence, the licensor;
  "licence" means a licence to occupy premises; and "licensee" is to be construed accordingly;
  "tenancy" means a tenancy created either immediately or derivatively out of the freehold, whether—
    (a) by a lease or sub-lease,
    (b) by an agreement for a lease or sub-lease,
    (c) by a tenancy agreement or sub-tenancy agreement, or
    (d) in pursuance of a provision of, or made under, an Act,
  and includes a tenancy at will.

(3) Where two or more persons jointly constitute either the landlord or the tied pub tenant, any reference in this Part to the landlord or to the tied pub tenant is a reference to both or all of the persons who jointly constitute the landlord or the tied pub tenant, as the case may require.

71 Power to grant exemptions from Pubs Code

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations provide that the Pubs Code does not, or specified provisions of the Pubs Code do not, apply in relation to—
  (a) the dealings of pub-owning businesses—
    (i) with tied pub tenants of a specified description, or
    (ii) in relation to tied pubs of a specified description;
  (b) the dealings of a specified pub-owning business or pub-owning businesses of a specified description—

(i) with their tied pub tenants or tied pub tenants of a specified description, or

(ii) in relation to their tied pubs or tied pubs of a specified description.

(2) Regulations under subsection (1) may, in particular, specify a description of pub-owning businesses or tied pub tenants by reference to—

(a) the nature of the tenancy or licence, or

(b) the nature of any other contractual agreement entered (or to be entered) into by the tied pub tenant with the pub-owning business, or a person nominated by that business, in connection with the tenancy or licence.

(3) The regulations may provide for circumstances in which a tied pub of a specified description is to be disregarded for the purposes of determining under section 69 whether a person is a pub-owning business.

(4) In this section "specified" means specified in regulations.

72 Interpretation: other provision

(1) In this Part—

"the Adjudicator" means the Pubs Code Adjudicator;

"arbitration agreement" has the same meaning as in section 6 of the Arbitration Act 1996;

"financial year" means a period of 12 months beginning with 1 April and ending with 31 March;

"group undertaking" has the meaning given by section 1161 of the Companies Act 2006;

"independent assessor" has the meaning given by section 44;

"market rent" and "market rent only option" have the meanings given by section 43;

"MRO procedure" has the meaning given by section 44;

"MRO-compliant", in relation to a tenancy or licence, has the meaning given by section 43;

"parallel rent assessment" has such meaning as may be prescribed in regulations made by the Secretary of State;

"product or service tie" means a product tie or a service tie;

"product tie" means any contractual obligation, other than a stocking requirement, of a tied pub tenant that a product to be sold at the tied pub must be supplied by—

(a) the landlord of the tied pub or a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord, or

(b) a person nominated by the landlord or by a person who is group undertaking in relation to the landlord;

"the Pubs Code" means the regulations under section 42;

"service tie" means any contractual obligation of a tied pub tenant to receive a service supplied by—

(a) the landlord of the tied pub or a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord, or

(b) a person nominated by the landlord or by a person who is a group undertaking in relation to the landlord;

"stocking requirement" has the meaning given by section 68.

(2) In this Part, references to "rent", in relation to a licence to occupy, are to be read as references to the fee payable in respect of the licence.

73 Regulations under this Part

(1) Subject to subsection (2), regulations under this Part are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(2) Regulations under section 66(1)(c) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(3) If a draft of an instrument containing regulations under section 71 would, apart from this subsection, be treated for the purposes of the Standing Orders of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it is to proceed as if it were not such an instrument.

PART 5

CHILDCARE AND SCHOOLS

74 Funding for free of charge early years provision

(1) In section 13A of the Childcare Act 2006 (supply of information: free of charge early years provision)—
  (a) in subsection (3), after "provision" insert "or for funding related to free of charge early years provision";
  (b) in subsection (6), after "provision" insert "or for funding related to free of charge early years provision".

(2) In section 13B of that Act (unauthorised disclosure of information received under section 13A), in subsection (2)(b), after "provision" insert "or for funding related to free of charge early years provision".

75 Exemption from requirement to register as early years provider

(1) In section 34(2) of the Childcare Act 2006 (requirement to register: other early years providers) for "three" substitute "two".

(2) In section 40(1)(b) of that Act (duty to implement Early Years Foundation Stage) for "3" substitute "2".

(3) In section 63(3) of that Act (applications for registration on the general register)—
  (a) in the words before paragraph (a), for "three" substitute "two";
  (b) in paragraph (c) (as it has effect prior to the coming into force of paragraph 35(4) of Schedule 1 to the Education and Skills Act 2008) for "three" substitute "two".

(4) In section 99(1)(b) of that Act (provision of information about young children: England) for "3" substitute "2".

(5) In section 94(5)(b) of the Education and Skills Act 2008 (independent educational institution standards) for "three" substitute "two".

76 Childminding other than on domestic premises

(1) Section 96 of the Childcare Act 2006 (meaning of early years and later years provision etc.) is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (5).

(2) In subsection (4) (definition of "early years childminding")—
  (a) omit "on domestic premises", and
  (b) after "reward" insert ", where at least half of the provision is on domestic premises".

(3) In subsection (5) (exception to subsection (4))—
  (a) for "on domestic premises for reward" substitute "which would otherwise fall within subsection (4)", and
  (b) omit "on the premises".

(4) In subsection (8) (definition of "later years childminding")—
  (a) omit "on domestic premises", and
  (b) after "reward" insert ", where at least half of the provision is on domestic premises".

(5) In subsection (9) (exception to subsection (8))—
  (a) for "on domestic premises for reward" substitute "which would otherwise fall within subsection (8)", and
  (b) omit "on the premises".

(6) In section 34 of that Act (requirement to register: other early years providers)—
  (a) after subsection (1) insert—

    "(1ZA) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to early years provision—
      (a) if it is early years childminding in respect of which the person providing it is required to be registered under section 33(1), or
      (b) if it would be early years childminding but for section 96(5) and in respect of which the person providing it is required to be registered under subsection (1A).", and
  (b) in subsection (1A) omit "on domestic premises".

(7) In section 53 of that Act (requirement to register: other later years providers)—
  (a) after subsection (1) insert—

    "(1ZA) Subsection (1) does not apply in relation to later years provision—
      (a) if it is later years childminding in respect of which the person providing it is required to be registered under section 52(1), or
      (b) if it would be later years childminding but for section 96(9) and in respect of which the person providing it is required to be registered under subsection (1A).", and
  (b) in subsection (1A) omit "on domestic premises".

77 Registration of childcare: premises

Schedule 2 makes amendments for the purpose of removing the requirement for certain childcare providers to be registered under the Childcare Act 2006 in respect of each premises from which they operate.

PART 6

EDUCATION EVALUATION

78 Assessments of effectiveness

(1) Part 3 of the Education and Skills Act 2008 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 87 (benefit and training information)—
- (a) in each of subsections (2)(a) and (3)(a) omit "who has attained the age of 19";
- (b) in subsection (3)(c) omit "(whether before or after the individual attained the age of 19)";
- (c) in subsection (4)(a) omit "provided for persons who have attained the age of 19";
- (d) in subsection (4)(b) and (c) omit "such", in each place.

(3) Omit section 91(6) (references to training or education do not include references to higher education).

(4) In consequence of the amendments made by subsections (1) to (3)—
- (a) for the Part heading substitute "Assessments of effectiveness of education and training etc";
- (b) omit the italic heading before section 87.

79 Qualifications

(1) After section 253 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 insert—

"Qualifications

253A Qualifications

(1) A person in England may, in prescribed circumstances, provide student information of a prescribed description to—
- (a) the Secretary of State,
- (b) an information collator,
- (c) a prescribed person, or
- (d) a person falling within a prescribed category.

(2) A person in Wales may, in prescribed circumstances, provide student information of a prescribed description to—
- (a) the Welsh Ministers,
- (b) an information collator,
- (c) a prescribed person, or
- (d) a person falling within a prescribed category.

(3) In subsection (2) "prescribed" means prescribed in regulations made by the Welsh Ministers.

(4) Subject to subsection (5)(a), information received under or by virtue of this section is not to be published in any form which identifies the individual to whom it relates.

(5) This section—

(a) does not affect any power to provide or publish information which exists apart from this section, and

(b) is subject to any express restriction on the provision of information imposed by another enactment.

(6) In this section—

"information collator" means any body which, for the purposes of or in connection with functions of the Secretary of State or the Welsh Ministers, is responsible for collating or checking information relating to regulated qualifications or relevant qualifications;

"regulated qualification" has the meaning given by section 130(1);

"relevant qualification" has the meaning given by section 30(5) of the Education Act 1997;

"student information" means information (whether obtained under this section or otherwise) relating to an individual who is seeking or has sought to obtain, or has obtained, a regulated qualification or a relevant qualification".

(2) In section 262 of the Apprenticeships, Skills, Children and Learning Act 2009 (orders and regulations)—

(a) in subsection (1) (orders and regulations to be made by statutory instrument etc) after "Part 3 or 4" insert ", or section 253A", and

(b) in subsection (9) (statutory instruments which are subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the National Assembly for Wales if containing regulations etc made by the Welsh Ministers) for "or 107" substitute ", 107 or 253A".

80 Destinations

Before section 50 of the Further and Higher Education Act 1992 insert—

"49B Destinations

(1) The Secretary of State may provide destination information to the governing body of an institution in England within the further education sector.

(2) The Welsh Ministers may provide destination information to the governing body of an institution in Wales within the further education sector.

(3) In this section "destination information", in relation to an institution, means information which—

(a) relates to a former student of the institution, and

(b) includes information as to prescribed activities of the former student after leaving the institution.

(4) Regulations under subsection (3)(b) which prescribe activities as to which the Welsh Ministers may provide information are to be made by the Welsh Ministers.

(5) Subject to subsection (6)(a), information received under this section is not to be published in any form which identifies the individual to whom it relates.

(6) This section—
  (a) does not affect any power to provide or publish information which exists apart from this section, and
  (b) is subject to any express restriction on the provision of information imposed by another enactment."

PART 7

COMPANIES: TRANSPARENCY

Register of people with significant control

81 Register of people with significant control

Schedule 3 amends the Companies Act 2006 to require companies to keep a register of people who have significant control over the company.

82 Review of provisions about PSC registers

(1) The Secretary of State must before the end of the review period—
  (a) carry out a review of Part 21A of the Companies Act 2006 (inserted by Schedule 3 to this Act) and of other provisions of the Companies Act 2006 inserted by this Act that relate to that Part, and
  (b) prepare and publish a report setting out the conclusions of the review.

(2) The report must in particular—
  (a) set out the objectives intended to be achieved by the provisions of the Companies Act 2006 mentioned in subsection (1)(a),
  (b) assess the extent to which those objectives have been achieved, and
  (c) assess whether those objectives remain appropriate and, if so, the extent to which they could be achieved in another way that imposed less regulation.

(3) The Secretary of State must lay the report before Parliament.

(4) The "review period" is the period of 3 years beginning with the day on which section 92 (duty to deliver confirmation statement instead of annual return) comes into force.

Register of interests disclosed

83 Amendment of section 813 of the Companies Act 2006

In section 813 of the Companies Act 2006 (register of interests disclosed: refusal of inspection or default in providing copy), in subsection (1), for the words "an order of the court" substitute "section 812".

Abolition of share warrants to bearer

84 Abolition of share warrants to bearer

(1) In section 779 of the Companies Act 2006 (issue and effect of share warrant to bearer), after subsection (3) insert—

"(4) No share warrant may be issued by a company (irrespective of whether its articles purport to authorise it to do so) on or after the day on which section 84 of the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 comes into force."

(2) For the heading of that section substitute "Prohibition on issue of new share warrants and effect of existing share warrants".

(3) Schedule 4—

(a) makes provision for arrangements by which share warrants issued before this section comes into force are to be converted into registered shares or cancelled, and

(b) makes amendments consequential on that provision.

85 Amendment of company's articles to reflect abolition of share warrants

(1) This section applies in the case of a company limited by shares if, immediately before the day on which section 84 comes into force, the company's articles contain provision authorising the company to issue share warrants ("the offending provision").

(2) The company may amend its articles for the purpose of removing the offending provision—

(a) without having passed a special resolution as required by section 21 of the Companies Act 2006;

(b) without complying with any provision for entrenchment which is relevant to the offending provision (see section 22 of that Act).

(3) Section 26 of the Companies Act 2006 sets out the duty of a company to send the registrar a copy of its articles where they have been amended.

(4) Expressions defined for the purposes of the Companies Act 2006 have the same meaning in this section as in that Act.

86 Review of section 84

(1) The Secretary of State must, as soon as reasonably practicable after the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which section 84 comes into force—

(a) carry out a review of section 84, and

(b) prepare and publish a report setting out the conclusions of the review.

(2) The report must in particular—

(a) set out the objectives intended to be achieved by the section, and

(b) assess the extent to which those objectives have been achieved.

(3) The Secretary of State must lay the report before Parliament.

Corporate directors

87 Requirement for all company directors to be natural persons

(1) The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

(2) Omit section 155 (companies required to have at least one director who is a natural person).

(3) In section 156 (direction requiring company to make appointment)—
  (a) in subsection (1), for "section 155" substitute "provision by virtue of section 156B(4)";
  (b) in subsection (4), for "of section 154 or 155" substitute "as mentioned in subsection (1)".

(4) Before section 157 (and after the preceding cross-heading) insert—

"156A Each director to be a natural person

(1) A person may not be appointed a director of a company unless the person is a natural person.

(2) Subsection (1) does not prohibit the holding of the office of director by a natural person as a corporation sole or otherwise by virtue of an office.

(3) An appointment made in contravention of this section is void.

(4) Nothing in this section affects any liability of a person under any provision of the Companies Acts or any other enactment if the person—
  (a) purports to act as director, or
  (b) acts as shadow director,
although the person could not, by virtue of this section, be validly appointed as a director.

(5) This section has effect subject to section 156B (power to provide for exceptions from requirement that each director be a natural person).

(6) If a purported appointment is made in contravention of this section, an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company purporting to make the appointment,
  (b) where the purported appointment is of a body corporate or a firm that is a legal person under the law by which it is governed, that body corporate or firm, and
  (c) every officer of a person falling within paragraph (a) or (b) who is in default.
For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of a company.

(7) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction—
  (a) in England and Wales, to a fine;
  (b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale.

156B Power to provide for exceptions from requirement that each director be a natural person

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations for cases in which a person who is not a natural person may be appointed a director of a company.

(2) The regulations must specify the circumstances in which, and any conditions subject to which, the appointment may be made.

(3) Provision made by virtue of subsection (2) may in particular include provision that an appointment may be made only with the approval of a regulatory body specified in the regulations.

(4) The regulations must include provision that a company must have at least one director who is a natural person (and for this purpose the requirement is met if the office of director is held by a natural person as a corporation sole or otherwise by virtue of an office).

(5) Regulations under this section may amend section 164 so as to require particulars relating to exceptions to be contained in a company's register of directors.

(6) The regulations may make different provision for different parts of the United Kingdom.

This is without prejudice to the general power to make different provision for different cases.

(7) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

156C Existing director who is not a natural person

(1) In this section "the relevant day" is the day after the end of the period of 12 months beginning with the day on which section 156A comes into force.

(2) Where—

(a) a person appointed a director of a company before section 156A comes into force is not a natural person, and

(b) the case is not one excepted from that section by regulations under section 156B,

that person ceases to be a director on the relevant day.

(3) The company must—

(a) make the necessary consequential alteration in its register of directors, and

(b) give notice to the registrar of the change in accordance with section 167.

(4) If an election is in force under section 167A in respect of the company, the company must, in place of doing the things required by subsection (3), deliver to the registrar in accordance with section 167D the information of which the company would otherwise have been obliged to give notice under subsection (3).

(5) If it appears to the registrar that—

(a) a notice should have, but has not, been given in accordance with subsection (3)(b), or

(b) information should have, but has not, been delivered in accordance with subsection (4),

the registrar must place a note in the register recording the fact."

88 Review of section 87

(1) The Secretary of State must, before the end of each review period—

(a) carry out a review of section 87, and

(b) prepare and publish a report setting out the conclusions of the review.

(2) The report must in particular—

(a) set out the objectives intended to be achieved by the section,

(b) assess the extent to which those objectives have been achieved, and

(c) assess whether those objectives remain appropriate and, if so, the extent to which they could be achieved in another way which imposed less regulation.

(3) The Secretary of State must lay the report before Parliament.

(4) Each of the following is a review period for the purposes of this section—

(a) the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which section 87 comes into force (whether wholly or partly), and

(b) each successive period of 5 years.

Shadow directors

89 Application of directors' general duties to shadow directors

(1) In section 170 of the Companies Act 2006 (scope and nature of general duties of directors) for subsection (5) substitute—

"(5) The general duties apply to a shadow director of a company where and to the extent that they are capable of so applying."

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the application of the general duties of directors to shadow directors.

(3) The regulations may, in particular, make provision—

(a) for prescribed general duties of directors to apply to shadow directors with such adaptations as may be prescribed;

(b) for prescribed general duties of directors not to apply to shadow directors.

(4) In this section—

"director" and "shadow director" have the same meanings as in the Companies Act 2006;

"general duties of directors" means the duties specified in sections 171 to 177 of that Act;

"prescribed" means prescribed in regulations.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

90 Shadow directors: definition

(1) In section 251 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (expressions used generally), in the definition of "shadow director", for the words from "(but" to the end substitute ", but so that a person is not deemed a shadow director by reason only that the directors act—

(a) on advice given by that person in a professional capacity;

(b) in accordance with instructions, a direction, guidance or advice given by that person in the exercise of a function conferred by or under an enactment (within the meaning given by section 1293 of the Companies Act 2006);

(c) in accordance with guidance or advice given by that person in that person's capacity as a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975)".

(2) In section 22(5) of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (definition of "shadow director") for the words from "(but" to the end substitute ", but so that a person is not deemed a shadow director by reason only that the directors act—

(a) on advice given by that person in a professional capacity;

(b) in accordance with instructions, a direction, guidance or advice given by that person in the exercise of a function conferred by or under an enactment;

(c) in accordance with guidance or advice given by that person in that person's capacity as a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975)".

(3) In section 251(2) of the Companies Act 2006 (definition of "shadow director") for the words "on advice given by him in a professional capacity" substitute "—

(a) on advice given by that person in a professional capacity;

(b) in accordance with instructions, a direction, guidance or advice given by that person in the exercise of a function conferred by or under an enactment;

(c) in accordance with guidance or advice given by that person in that person's capacity as a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975)".

(4) In section 1293 of the Companies Act 2006 (meaning of "enactment") after paragraph (a) insert—

"(aa) an enactment contained in, or in an instrument made under, a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales,".

91 Shadow directors: provision for Northern Ireland

(1) In Article 5(1) of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)) (interpretation), in the definition of "shadow director", for the words from "(but" to the end substitute ", but so that a person is not deemed a shadow director by reason only that the directors act—

(a) on advice given by that person in a professional capacity;

(b) in accordance with instructions, a direction, guidance or advice given by that person in the exercise of a function conferred by or under a statutory provision;

(c) in accordance with guidance or advice given by that person in that person's capacity as a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975)".

(2) In Article 2(2) of the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4)) (interpretation), in the definition of "shadow director", for the words from "(but" to the end substitute ", but so that a person is not deemed a shadow director by reason only that the directors act—

(a) on advice given by that person in a professional capacity;

(b) in accordance with instructions, a direction, guidance or advice given by that person in the exercise of a function conferred by or under a statutory provision;

(c) in accordance with guidance or advice given by that person in that person's capacity as a Minister of the Crown (within the meaning of the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975)".

PART 8

COMPANY FILING REQUIREMENTS

Annual return reform

92 Duty to deliver confirmation statement instead of annual return

For Part 24 of the Companies Act 2006 (annual return) substitute—

"PART 24

ANNUAL CONFIRMATION OF ACCURACY OF INFORMATION ON REGISTER

853A Duty to deliver confirmation statements

(1) Every company must, before the end of the period of 14 days after the end of each review period, deliver to the registrar—

(a) such information as is necessary to ensure that the company is able to make the statement referred to in paragraph (b), and

(b) a statement (a "confirmation statement") confirming that all information required to be delivered by the company to the registrar in relation to the confirmation period concerned under any duty mentioned in subsection (2) either—

(i) has been delivered, or

(ii) is being delivered at the same time as the confirmation statement.

(2) The duties are—

(a) any duty to notify a relevant event (see section 853B);

(b) any duty under sections 853C to 853I.

(3) In this Part "confirmation period"—

(a) in relation to a company's first confirmation statement, means the period beginning with the day of the company's incorporation and ending with the date specified in the statement ("the confirmation date");

(b) in relation to any other confirmation statement of a company, means the period beginning with the day after the confirmation date of the last such statement and ending with the confirmation date of the confirmation statement concerned.

(4) The confirmation date of a confirmation statement must be no later than the last day of the review period concerned.

(5) For the purposes of this Part, each of the following is a review period—

(a) the period of 12 months beginning with the day of the company's incorporation;

(b) each period of 12 months beginning with the day after the end of the previous review period.

(6) But where a company delivers a confirmation statement with a confirmation date which is earlier than the last day of the review period concerned, the next review period is the period of 12 months beginning with the day after the confirmation date.

(7) For the purpose of making a confirmation statement, a company is entitled to assume that any information has been properly delivered to the registrar if it has been delivered within the period of 5 days ending with the date on which the statement is delivered.

(8) But subsection (7) does not apply in a case where the company has received notice from the registrar that such information has not been properly delivered.

853B Duties to notify a relevant event

The following duties are duties to notify a relevant event—

(a) the duty to give notice of a change in the address of the company's registered office (see section 87);

(b) in the case of a company in respect of which an election is in force under section 128B (election to keep membership information on central register), the duty to deliver anything as mentioned in section 128E;

(c) the duty to give notice of a change as mentioned in section 167 (change in directors or in particulars required to be included in register of directors or register of directors' residential addresses);

(d) in the case of a company in respect of which an election is in force under section 167A (election to keep information in register of directors or register of directors' residential addresses on central register), the duty to deliver anything as mentioned in section 167D;

(e) in the case of a private company with a secretary or a public company, the duty to give notice of a change as mentioned in section 276 (change in secretary or joint secretaries or in particulars required to be included in register of secretaries);

(f) in the case of a private company with a secretary in respect of which an election is in force under section 279A (election to keep information in register of secretaries on central register), the duty to deliver anything as mentioned in section 279D;

(g) in the case of a company in respect of which an election is in force under section 790X (election to keep information in PSC

register on central register), the duty to deliver anything as mentioned in section 790ZA;

(h) in the case of a company which, in accordance with regulations under section 1136, keeps any company records at a place other than its registered office, any duty under the regulations to give notice of a change in the address of that place.

853C Duty to notify a change in company's principal business activities

(1) This section applies where—

(a) a company makes a confirmation statement, and

(b) there has been a change in the company's principal business activities during the confirmation period concerned.

(2) The company must give notice to the registrar of the change at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(3) The information as to the company's new principal business activities may be given by reference to one or more categories of any prescribed system of classifying business activities.

853D Duty to deliver statement of capital

(1) This section applies where a company having a share capital makes a confirmation statement.

(2) The company must deliver a statement of capital to the registrar at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply if there has been no change in any of the matters required to be dealt with by the statement of capital since the last such statement was delivered to the registrar.

(4) The statement of capital must state with respect to the company's share capital at the confirmation date—

(a) the total number of shares of the company,

(b) the aggregate nominal value of those shares,

(c) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and

(d) for each class of shares—

(i) prescribed particulars of the rights attached to the shares,

(ii) the total number of shares of that class, and

(iii) the aggregate nominal value of shares of that class.

853E Duty to notify trading status of shares

(1) This section applies where a company having a share capital makes a confirmation statement.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar a statement dealing with the matters mentioned in subsection (4) at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply if and to the extent that the last statement delivered to the registrar under this section applies equally to the confirmation period concerned.

(4) The matters are—

(a) whether any of the company's shares were, at any time during the confirmation period concerned, shares admitted to trading on a relevant market or on any other market which is outside the United Kingdom, and

(b) if so, whether both of the conditions mentioned in subsection (5) were satisfied throughout the confirmation period concerned.

(5) The conditions are that—

(a) there were shares of the company which were shares admitted to trading on a relevant market;

(b) the company was a DTR5 issuer.

(6) In this Part—

"DTR5 issuer" means an issuer to which Chapter 5 of the Disclosure Rules and Transparency Rules sourcebook made by the Financial Conduct Authority (as amended or replaced from time to time) applies;

"relevant market" means any of the markets mentioned in article 4(1) of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (Prescribed Markets and Qualifying Investments) Order 2001.

853F Duty to deliver shareholder information: non-traded companies

(1) This section applies where—

(a) a non-traded company makes a confirmation statement, and

(b) there is no election in force under section 128B in respect of the company.

(2) A "non-traded company" is a company none of whose shares were, at any time during the confirmation period concerned, shares admitted to trading on a relevant market or on any other market which is outside the United Kingdom.

(3) The company must deliver the information falling within subsection (5) to the registrar at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(4) Subsection (3) does not apply if and to the extent that the information most recently delivered to the registrar under this section applies equally to the confirmation period concerned.

(5) The information is—

(a) the name (as it appears in the company's register of members) of every person who was at any time during the confirmation period a member of the company,

(b) the number of shares of each class held at the end of the confirmation date concerned by each person who was a member of the company at that time,

(c) the number of shares of each class transferred during the confirmation period concerned by or to each person who was a member of the company at any time during that period, and

(d) the dates of registration of those transfers.

(6) The registrar may impose requirements about the form in which information of the kind mentioned in subsection (5)(a) is delivered for

the purpose of enabling the entries on the register relating to any given person to be easily found.

853G Duty to deliver shareholder information: certain traded companies

(1) This section applies where a traded company makes a confirmation statement.

(2) A "traded company" is a company any of whose shares were, at any time during the confirmation period concerned, shares admitted to trading on a relevant market or on any other market which is outside the United Kingdom.

(3) But a company is not a traded company if throughout the confirmation period concerned—
  (a) there were shares of the company which were shares admitted to trading on a relevant market, and
  (b) the company was a DTR5 issuer.

(4) The company must deliver the information falling within subsection (6) to the registrar at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(5) Subsection (4) does not apply if and to the extent the information most recently delivered to the registrar under this section applies equally to the confirmation period concerned.

(6) The information is—
  (a) the name and address (as they appear in the company's register of members) of each person who, at the end of the confirmation date concerned, held at least 5% of the issued shares of any class of the company, and
  (b) the number of shares of each class held by each such person at that time.

853H Duty to deliver information about exemption from Part 21A

(1) This section applies where a company—
  (a) which is not a DTR5 issuer, and
  (b) to which Part 21A does not apply (information about people with significant control, see section 790B),

makes a confirmation statement.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar a statement of the fact that it is a company to which Part 21A does not apply at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply if the last statement delivered to the registrar under this section applies equally to the confirmation period concerned.

853I Duty to deliver information about people with significant control

(1) This section applies where—
  (a) a company to which Part 21A (information about people with significant control) applies makes a confirmation statement, and

(b) there is no election in force under section 790X in respect of the company.

(2) The company must deliver the information stated in its PSC register to the registrar at the same time as it delivers the confirmation statement.

(3) Subsection (2) does not apply if and to the extent that the information most recently delivered to the registrar under this section applies equally to the confirmation period concerned.

(4) "PSC register" has the same meaning as in Part 21A (see section 790C).

853J Power to amend duties to deliver certain information

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the duties on a company in relation to the delivery of information falling within section 853E(4), 853F(5), 853G(6), 853H(2) or 853I(2) (referred to in this section as "relevant information").

(2) The regulations may, in particular, make provision requiring relevant information to be delivered—
  (a) on such occasions as may be prescribed;
  (b) at such intervals as may be prescribed.

(3) The regulations may amend or repeal the provisions of sections 853A, 853B and 853E to 853I.

(4) The regulations may provide—
  (a) that where a company fails to comply with any duty to deliver relevant information an offence is committed by—
    (i) the company,
    (ii) every director of the company,
    (iii) in the case of a private company with a secretary or a public company, every secretary of the company, and
    (iv) every other officer of the company who is in default;
  (b) that a person guilty of such an offence is liable on summary conviction—
    (i) in England and Wales, to a fine and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale;
    (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale;
  (c) that, in the case of continued contravention, an offence is also committed by every officer of the company who did not commit an offence under provision made under paragraph (a) in relation to the initial contravention but who is in default in relation to the continued contravention;
  (d) that a person guilty of such an offence is liable on summary conviction—
    (i) in England and Wales, to a fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale for each day on which the contravention continues and the person is in default;

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale for each day on which the contravention continues and the person is in default.

(5) The regulations may provide that, for the purposes of any provision made under subsection (4), a shadow director is to be treated as a director.

(6) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

853K Confirmation statements: power to make further provision by regulations

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make further provision as to the duties to deliver information to the registrar to which a confirmation statement is to relate.

(2) The regulations may—
(a) amend or repeal the provisions of sections 853A to 853I, and
(b) provide for exceptions from the requirements of those sections as they have effect from time to time.

(3) Regulations under this section which provide that a confirmation statement must relate to a duty to deliver information not for the time being mentioned in section 853A(2) are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(4) Any other regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

853L Failure to deliver confirmation statement

(1) If a company fails to deliver a confirmation statement before the end of the period of 14 days after the end of a review period an offence is committed by—
(a) the company,
(b) every director of the company,
(c) in the case of a private company with a secretary or a public company, every secretary of the company, and
(d) every other officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as a director.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (1) is liable on summary conviction—
(a) in England and Wales to a fine, and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale;
(b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

(3) The contravention continues until such time as a confirmation statement specifying a confirmation date no later than the last day of

the review period concerned is delivered by the company to the registrar.

(4) It is a defence for a director or secretary charged with an offence under subsection (1)(b) or (c) to prove that the person took all reasonable steps to avoid the commission or continuation of the offence.

(5) In the case of continued contravention, an offence is also committed by every officer of the company who did not commit an offence under subsection (1) in relation to the initial contravention but who is in default in relation to the continued contravention.

(6) A person guilty of an offence under subsection (5) is liable on summary conviction—

(a) in England and Wales, to a fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale for each day on which the contravention continues and the person is in default;

(b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale for each day on which the contravention continues and the person is in default."

93 Section 92: related amendments

(1) The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 9 (registration documents), in subsection (5)—

(a) omit the "and" after paragraph (a), and

(b) after paragraph (b) insert "; and

(c) a statement of the type of company it is to be and its intended principal business activities."

(3) Also in section 9, after subsection (5) insert—

"(5A) The information as to the company's type must be given by reference to the classification scheme prescribed for the purposes of this section.

(5B) The information as to the company's intended principal business activities may be given by reference to one or more categories of any prescribed system of classifying business activities."

(4) In section 108 (statement of capital required where company re-registering as a limited company already has share capital), in subsection (2), for paragraph (b) substitute—

"(b) (if different) the last statement of capital sent by the company."

(5) In section 1078 (documents subject to Directive disclosure requirements), in subsection (2)—

(a) for the heading "Accounts, reports and returns" substitute "Accounts and reports etc", and

(b) under that heading, for "The company's annual return" substitute "Any confirmation statement delivered by the company under section 853A."

(6) In section 1169 (dormant companies), in subsection (3)(b)(iv), for "an annual return" substitute "a confirmation statement".

(7) In Schedule 8 (index of defined expressions)—

(a) omit the entries for "annual return", "non-traded company" and "return period", and
(b) in the appropriate places insert—

"confirmation date (in Part 24)	section 853A(3)",
"confirmation period (in Part 24)	section 853A(3)",
"confirmation statement	section 853A(1)",
"DTR5 issuer (in Part 24)	section 853E(6)",
"relevant market (in Part 24)	section 853E(6)", and
"review period (in Part 24)	section 853A(5) and (6)".

Additional information on the register

94 Option for companies to keep information on central register

Schedule 5 amends the Companies Act 2006 to give private companies the option of keeping certain information on the register kept by the registrar instead of keeping it on their own registers.

95 Recording of optional information on register

(1) After section 1084 of the Companies Act 2006 insert—

"1084A Recording of optional information on register

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations authorising a company or other body to deliver optional information of a prescribed description to the registrar.

(2) In this section "optional information", in relation to a company or other body, means information about the company or body which, but for the regulations, the company or body would not be obliged or authorised under any enactment to deliver to the registrar.

(3) The regulations may, in particular, include provision—
(a) imposing requirements on a company or other body in relation to keeping any of its optional information recorded on the register up to date;
(b) about the consequences of a company or other body failing to do so.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure."

(2) In section 1059A of that Act (scheme of Part 35), in subsection (2), after the entry in the list for section 1083 insert—
"section 1084A (recording optional information on register),".

Information about dates of birth

96 Protection of information about a person's date of birth

(1) Part 35 of the Companies Act 2006 (the registrar of companies) is amended as follows.

(2) In section 1087 (material not available for public inspection), in subsection (1), after paragraph (d) insert—

"(da) information falling within section 1087A(1) (information about a person's date of birth);".

(3) After that section insert—

"1087A Information about a person's date of birth

(1) Information falls within this subsection at any time ("the relevant time") if—

(a) it is DOB information,

(b) it is contained in a document delivered to the registrar that is protected at the relevant time as regards that information,

(c) the document is one in which such information is required to be stated, and

(d) if the document has more than one part, the part in which the information is contained is a part in which such information is required to be stated.

(2) "DOB information" is information as to the day of the month (but not the month or year) on which a relevant person was born.

(3) A "relevant person" is an individual—

(a) who is a director of a company, or

(b) whose particulars are stated in a company's PSC register as a registrable person in relation to that company (see Part 21A).

(4) A document delivered to the registrar is "protected" at any time unless—

(a) it is an election period document,

(b) subsection (7) applies to it at the time, or

(c) it was registered before this section comes into force.

(5) As regards DOB information about a relevant person in his or her capacity as a director of the company, each of the following is an "election period document"—

(a) a statement of the company's proposed officers delivered under section 9 in circumstances where the subscribers gave notice of election under section 167A (election to keep information on central register) in respect of the company's register of directors when the statement was delivered;

(b) a document delivered by the company under section 167D (duty to notify registrar of changes while election in force).

(6) As regards DOB information about a relevant person in his or her capacity as someone whose particulars are stated in the company's PSC register, each of the following is an "election period document"—

(a) a statement of initial significant control delivered under section 9 in circumstances where the subscribers gave notice of election under section 790X in respect of the company when the statement was delivered;

(b) a document containing a statement or updated statement delivered by the company under section 790X(6)(b) or (7) (statement accompanying notice of election made after incorporation);

(c) a document delivered by the company under section 790ZA (duty to notify registrar of changes while election in force).

(7) This subsection applies to a document if—

(a) the DOB information relates to the relevant person in his or her capacity as a director of the company,

(b) an election under section 167A is or has previously been in force in respect of the company's register of directors,

(c) the document was delivered to the registrar at some point before that election took effect,

(d) the relevant person was a director of the company when that election took effect, and

(e) the document was either—

(i) a statement of proposed officers delivered under section 9 naming the relevant person as someone who was to be a director of the company, or

(ii) notice given under section 167 of the relevant person having become a director of the company.

(8) Information about a person does not cease to fall within subsection (1) when he or she ceases to be a relevant person and, to that extent, references in this section to a relevant person include someone who used to be a relevant person.

(9) Nothing in subsection (1) obliges the registrar to check other documents or (as the case may be) other parts of the document to ensure the absence of DOB information.

1087B Disclosure of DOB information

(1) The registrar must not disclose restricted DOB information unless—

(a) the same information about the relevant person (whether in the same or a different capacity) is made available by the registrar for public inspection as a result of being contained in another description of document in relation to which no restriction under section 1087 applies (see subsection (2) of that section), or

(b) disclosure of the information by the registrar is permitted by subsection (2) or another provision of this Act.

(2) The registrar may disclose restricted DOB information—

(a) to a public authority specified for the purposes of this subsection by regulations made by the Secretary of State, or

(b) to a credit reference agency.

(3) Subsections (3) to (8) of section 243 (permitted use or disclosure of directors' residential addresses etc by the registrar) apply for the purposes of subsection (2) as for the purposes of that section (reading

references there to protected information as references to restricted DOB information).

(4) This section does not apply to restricted DOB information about a relevant person in his or her capacity as someone whose particulars are stated in the company's PSC register if an application under regulations made under section 790ZG (regulations for protecting PSC particulars) has been granted with respect to that information and not been revoked.

(5) "Restricted DOB information" means information falling within section 1087A(1)."

Statements of capital etc

97 Contents of statements of capital

Schedule 6 amends the Companies Act 2006 to alter the content of statements of capital required under various provisions of that Act.

98 Public companies: information about aggregate amount paid up on shares

(1) The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 94 (application for re-registration as a public company), in subsection (2)—
  (a) omit the "and" at the end of paragraph (c), and
  (b) after paragraph (d) insert "; and
    (e) a statement of the aggregate amount paid up on the shares of the company on account of their nominal value."

(3) In section 762 (procedure for a public company to obtain a trading certificate), in subsection (1)—
  (a) omit the "and" at the end of paragraph (c), and
  (b) after paragraph (d), insert ", and
    (e) be accompanied by a statement of the aggregate amount paid up on the shares of the company on account of their nominal value."

(4) In section 1078 (documents subject to Directive disclosure requirements)—
  (a) in subsection (3), under the heading "Share capital", after the entry numbered 11 insert—
    "12 Any statement delivered under section 762(1)(e) (statement of the aggregate amount paid up on shares on account of their nominal value).", and
  (b) after subsection (3) insert—
    "(3A) In the case of a private company which applies to re-register as a public company, the statement delivered under section 94(2)(e) (statement of the aggregate amount paid up on shares on account of their nominal value)."

Registered office disputes

99 Address of company registered office

(1) After section 1097 of the Companies Act 2006 insert—

"1097A Rectification of register relating to company registered office

(1) The Secretary of State may make provision by regulations requiring the registrar, on application, to change the address of a company's registered office if the registrar is satisfied that the company is not authorised to use the address.

(2) The applicant and the company must provide such information as the registrar may require for the purposes of determining such an application.

(3) The regulations may make provision as to—
- (a) who may make an application,
- (b) the information to be included in and documents to accompany an application,
- (c) the notice to be given of an application and of its outcome,
- (d) the period in which objections to an application may be made,
- (e) how an application is to be determined, including in particular the evidence, or descriptions of evidence, which the registrar may without further enquiry rely on to be satisfied that the company is authorised to use the address,
- (f) the referral of the application, or any question relating to the application, by the registrar for determination by the court,
- (g) the registrar requiring a company to provide an address to be the company's registered office,
- (h) the nomination by the registrar of an address (a "default address") to be the company's registered office,
- (i) the effect of the registration of any change.

(4) Subject to further provision which may be made by virtue of subsection (3)(i), the change takes effect upon it being registered by the registrar, but until the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the date on which it is registered a person may validly serve any document on the company at the address previously registered.

(5) Provision made by virtue of subsection (3)(i) may in particular include provision, in relation to the registration of a default address—
- (a) for the suspension, for up to 28 days beginning with the date on which it is registered, of duties of the company under this Act relating to the inspection of company records or to the provision, disclosure or display of information,
- (b) that the default address may not be used for the purpose of keeping the company's registers, indexes or other documents,
- (c) for there to be no requirement that documents delivered to the default address for the company must be opened,
- (d) for the collection of such documents by the company, or the forwarding of such documents to the company,
- (e) for the circumstances in which, and the period of time after which, such documents may be destroyed,

(f) about evidence, or descriptions of evidence, that the registrar may require a company to provide if giving notice to the registrar to change the address of its registered office from a default address.

(6) The applicant or the company may appeal the outcome of an application under this section to the court.

(7) On an appeal, the court must direct the registrar to register such address as the registered office of the company as the court considers appropriate in all the circumstances of the case.

(8) The regulations may make further provision about an appeal and in particular—

(a) provision about the time within which an appeal must be brought and the grounds on which an appeal may be brought,

(b) provision for the suspension, pending the outcome of an appeal, of duties of the company under this Act relating to the inspection of company records or to the provision, disclosure or display of information,

(c) further provision about directions by virtue of subsection (7).

(9) The regulations may include such provision applying (including applying with modifications), amending or repealing an enactment contained in this Act as the Secretary of State considers necessary or expedient in consequence of any provision made by the regulations.

(10) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure."

(2) In section 1087(1) of that Act (material not available for public inspection), after paragraph (g) insert—

"(ga) any application or other document delivered to the registrar under section 1097A (rectification of company registered office) other than an order or direction of the court;".

Director disputes

100 Company filing requirements: consent to act as director or secretary

(1) The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 12 (statement of proposed officers), for the first sentence of subsection (3) substitute—

"The statement must also include a statement by the subscribers to the memorandum of association that each of the persons named as a director, as secretary or as one of the joint secretaries has consented to act in the relevant capacity."

(3) In section 95 (statement of proposed secretary), for the first sentence of subsection (3) substitute—

"The statement must also include a statement by the company that the person named as secretary, or each of the persons named as joint secretaries, has consented to act in the relevant capacity."

(4) In section 167 (duty to notify registrar of changes), in subsection (2), for

paragraph (b) substitute—

"(b) be accompanied by a statement by the company that the person has consented to act in that capacity."

(5) In section 276 (duty to notify registrar of changes), in subsection (2), for "consent by that person" substitute "statement by the company that the person has consented".

(6) The amendments made by this section do not apply if the statement of proposed officers, statement of the company's proposed secretary or notice under section 167 or 276 of the Companies Act 2006 was received by the registrar before this section comes into force.

101 Registrar's duty to inform new directors of entry in register

(1) In Part 35 of the Companies Act 2006 (the registrar of companies), after section 1079A insert—

"Notice of receipt of documents about new directors

1079B Duty to notify directors

(1) This section applies whenever the registrar registers either of the following documents—
  (a) the statement of proposed officers required on formation of a company, or
  (b) notice under section 167 or 167D of a person having become a director of a company.

(2) As soon as reasonably practicable after registering the document, the registrar must notify—
  (a) in the case of a statement of proposed officers, the person or each person named in the statement as a director of the company, or
  (b) in the case of a notice under section 167 or 167D, the person named in the document as having become a director of the company.

(3) The notice must—
  (a) state that the person is named in the document as a director of the company, and
  (b) include such information relating to the office and duties of a director (or such details of where information of that sort can be found) as the Secretary of State may from time to time direct the registrar to include.

(4) The notice may be sent in hard copy or electronic form to any address for the person that the registrar has received from either the subscribers or the company."

(2) The amendment made by this section does not apply if the statement of proposed officers or notice under section 167 or 167D of the Companies Act 2006 was received by the registrar before this section comes into force.

102 Removal from register of material about directors

(1) In section 1095 of the Companies Act 2006 (rectification of register on application to registrar), after subsection (4) insert—

"(4A) Subsections (4B) and (4C) apply, in place of subsection (4), in a case where—

(a) the material specified in the application is material naming a person—

(i) in a statement of a company's proposed officers as a person who is to be a director of the company, or

(ii) in a notice given by a company under section 167 or 167D as a person who has become a director of the company, and

(b) the application is made by or on behalf of the person named and is accompanied by a statement that the person did not consent to act as director of the company.

(4B) If the company provides the registrar with the necessary evidence within the time required by the regulations, the registrar must not remove the material from the register.

(4C) If the company does not provide the registrar with the necessary evidence within that time—

(a) the material is conclusively presumed for the purposes of this section to be derived from something that is factually inaccurate, and

(b) the registrar must accept the applicant's statement as sufficient evidence that the material should be removed from the register.

(4D) "The necessary evidence" is—

(a) evidence sufficient to satisfy the registrar that the person did consent to act as director of the company, plus

(b) a statement by the company that the evidence provided by it is true and is not misleading or deceptive in any material particular."

(2) The amendment made by this section does not apply to material contained in a statement of proposed officers or notice given under section 167 or 167D of the Companies Act 2006 if the statement or notice was received by the registrar before this section comes into force.

Accelerated strike-off

103 Reduction in notice periods etc for striking off companies

(1) Chapter 1 of Part 31 of the Companies Act 2006 (striking off) is amended as follows.

(2) In section 1000 (power to strike off company not carrying on business or in operation)—

(a) in subsection (2)—

(i) for "one month of sending" substitute "14 days of sending",

(ii) for "that month" substitute "that period", and

(iii) in paragraph (b), for "one month" substitute "14 days", and

(b) in subsection (3)—
(i) in paragraph (b), for "one month" substitute "14 days", and
(ii) for "three months" substitute "2 months".

(3) In section 1001 (duty to act in case of company being wound up), in subsection (1), for "three months" substitute "2 months".

(4) In section 1003 (striking off on application by company), in subsection (3), for "three months" substitute "2 months".

(5) The amendments made by subsection (2) do not apply in cases where the communication mentioned in section 1000(1) of the Companies Act 2006 has already been sent before this section comes into force.

(6) The amendment made by subsection (3) does not apply in cases where the notice mentioned in section 1001(1) of that Act has already been published in the Gazette before this section comes into force.

(7) The amendment made by subsection (4) does not apply in cases where the application under section 1003(1) of that Act has already been made before this section comes into force.

PART 9

DIRECTORS' DISQUALIFICATION ETC

New grounds for disqualification

104 Convictions abroad

(1) After section 5 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 insert—

"5A Disqualification for certain convictions abroad

(1) If it appears to the Secretary of State that it is expedient in the public interest that a disqualification order under this section should be made against a person, the Secretary of State may apply to the court for such an order.

(2) The court may, on an application under subsection (1), make a disqualification order against a person who has been convicted of a relevant foreign offence.

(3) A "relevant foreign offence" is an offence committed outside Great Britain—
(a) in connection with—
(i) the promotion, formation, management, liquidation or striking off of a company (or any similar procedure),
(ii) the receivership of a company's property (or any similar procedure), or
(iii) a person being an administrative receiver of a company (or holding a similar position), and
(b) which corresponds to an indictable offence under the law of England and Wales or (as the case may be) an indictable offence under the law of Scotland.

(4) Where it appears to the Secretary of State that, in the case of a person who has offered to give a disqualification undertaking—
  (a) the person has been convicted of a relevant foreign offence, and
  (b) it is expedient in the public interest that the Secretary of State should accept the undertaking (instead of applying, or proceeding with an application, for a disqualification order),

the Secretary of State may accept the undertaking.

(5) In this section—
  "company" includes an overseas company;
  "the court" means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

(6) The maximum period of disqualification under an order under this section is 15 years."

(2) Section 5A(2) and (4) of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986, as inserted by this section, applies in relation to a conviction of a relevant foreign offence which occurs on or after the day on which this section comes into force regardless of whether the act or omission which constituted the offence occurred before that day.

105 Persons instructing unfit director

After section 8 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 insert—

"Persons instructing unfit directors

"8ZA Order disqualifying person instructing unfit director of insolvent company

(1) The court may make a disqualification order against a person ("P") if, on an application under section 8ZB, it is satisfied—
  (a) either—
    (i) that a disqualification order under section 6 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company, or
    (ii) that the Secretary of State has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under section 7(2A), and
  (b) that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this section as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this section, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—
  (a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the order made under section 6, or
  (b) in relation to which the undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under section 7(2A),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(4) Under this section the minimum period of disqualification is 2 years and the maximum period is 15 years.

(5) In this section and section 8ZB "the court" has the same meaning as in section 6; and subsection (3B) of section 6 applies in relation to proceedings mentioned in subsection (6) below as it applies in relation to proceedings mentioned in section 6(3B)(a) and (b).

(6) The proceedings are proceedings—
  (a) for or in connection with a disqualification order under this section, or
  (b) in connection with a disqualification undertaking accepted under section 8ZC.

8ZB Application for order under section 8ZA

(1) If it appears to the Secretary of State that it is expedient in the public interest that a disqualification order should be made against a person under section 8ZA, the Secretary of State may—
  (a) make an application to the court for such an order, or
  (b) in a case where an application for an order under section 6 against the main transgressor has been made by the official receiver, direct the official receiver to make such an application.

(2) Except with the leave of the court, an application for a disqualification order under section 8ZA must not be made after the end of the period of 3 years beginning with the day on which the company in question became insolvent (within the meaning given by section 6(2)).

(3) Subsection (4) of section 7 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that section.

8ZC Disqualification undertaking instead of an order under section 8ZA

(1) If it appears to the Secretary of State that it is expedient in the public interest to do so, the Secretary of State may accept a disqualification undertaking from a person ("P") if—
  (a) any of the following is the case—
    (i) a disqualification order under section 6 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company,
    (ii) the Secretary of State has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under section 7(2A), or
    (iii) it appears to the Secretary of State that such an undertaking could be accepted from such a person (if one were offered), and
  (b) it appears to the Secretary of State that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

  That person is referred to in this section as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this section, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—

(a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the disqualification order made under section 6,

(b) in relation to which the disqualification undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under section 7(2A), or

(c) which led the Secretary of State to the conclusion set out in subsection (1)(a)(iii),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(4) Subsection (4) of section 7 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that section.

8ZD Order disqualifying person instructing unfit director: other cases

(1) The court may make a disqualification order against a person ("P") if, on an application under this section, it is satisfied—

(a) either—

(i) that a disqualification order under section 8 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company, or

(ii) that the Secretary of State has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under section 8(2A), and

(b) that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this section as "the main transgressor".

(2) The Secretary of State may make an application to the court for a disqualification order against P under this section if it appears to the Secretary of State that it is expedient in the public interest for such an order to be made.

(3) For the purposes of this section, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—

(a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the order made under section 8, or

(b) in relation to which the undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under section 8(2A),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(4) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(5) Under this section the maximum period of disqualification is 15 years.

(6) In this section "the court" means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

8ZE Disqualification undertaking instead of an order under section 8ZD

(1) If it appears to the Secretary of State that it is expedient in the public interest to do so, the Secretary of State may accept a disqualification undertaking from a person ("P") if—

(a) any of the following is the case—

(i) a disqualification order under section 8 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company,

(ii) the Secretary of State has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under section 8(2A), or

(iii) it appears to the Secretary of State that such an undertaking could be accepted from such a person (if one were offered), and

(b) it appears to the Secretary of State that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this section as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this section, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—

(a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the disqualification order made under section 8,

(b) in relation to which the disqualification undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under section 8(2A), or

(c) which led the Secretary of State to the conclusion set out in subsection (1)(a)(iii),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity."

Determining unfitness

106 Determining unfitness and disqualifications: matters to be taken into account

(1) The Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 6 (duty of court to disqualify unfit directors of insolvent companies)—

(a) in subsection (1)(b), for "any other company or companies" substitute "one or more other companies or overseas companies",

(b) after subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) In this section references to a person's conduct as a director of any company or overseas company include, where that company or overseas company has become insolvent, references to that person's conduct in relation to any matter connected with or arising out of the insolvency.",

(c) in subsection (2), omit the words from "and references" to the end, and

(d) after subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) For the purposes of this section, an overseas company becomes insolvent if the company enters into insolvency proceedings of any description (including interim proceedings) in any jurisdiction."

(3) In section 8 (disqualification where expedient in public interest)—

(a) in subsection (2), after "the company" insert "(either taken alone or taken together with his conduct as a director or shadow director of one or more other companies or overseas companies)",

(b) in subsection (2A)(a), after "shadow director" insert "(either taken alone or taken together with his conduct as a director or shadow director of one or more other companies or overseas companies)", and

(c) after subsection (2A) insert—

"(2B) Subsection (1A) of section 6 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that section."

(4) Omit section 9 (matters for determining unfitness of directors).

(5) After section 12B insert—

"12C Determining unfitness etc: matters to be taken into account

(1) This section applies where a court must determine—

(a) whether a person's conduct as a director of one or more companies or overseas companies makes the person unfit to be concerned in the management of a company;

(b) whether to exercise any discretion it has to make a disqualification order under any of sections 2 to 4, 5A, 8 or 10;

(c) where the court has decided to make a disqualification order under any of those sections or is required to make an order under section 6, what the period of disqualification should be.

(2) But this section does not apply where the court in question is one mentioned in section 2(2)(b) or (c).

(3) This section also applies where the Secretary of State must determine—

(a) whether a person's conduct as a director of one or more companies or overseas companies makes the person unfit to be concerned in the management of a company;

(b) whether to exercise any discretion the Secretary of State has to accept a disqualification undertaking under section 5A, 7 or 8.

(4) In making any such determination in relation to a person, the court or the Secretary of State must—

(a) in every case, have regard in particular to the matters set out in paragraphs 1 to 4 of Schedule 1;

(b) in a case where the person concerned is or has been a director of a company or overseas company, also have regard in particular to the matters set out in paragraphs 5 to 7 of that Schedule.

(5) In this section "director" includes a shadow director.

(6) Subsection (1A) of section 6 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purposes of that section.

(7) The Secretary of State may by order modify Schedule 1; and such an order may contain such transitional provision as may appear to the Secretary of State to be necessary or expedient.

(8) The power to make an order under this section is exercisable by statutory instrument.

(9) An order under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument containing it has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament."

(6) For Schedule 1 (matters determining unfitness of directors) substitute—

"SCHEDULE 1 Section 12C

DETERMINING UNFITNESS ETC: MATTERS TO BE TAKEN INTO ACCOUNT

Matters to be taken into account in all cases

1 The extent to which the person was responsible for the causes of any material contravention by a company or overseas company of any applicable legislative or other requirement.

2 Where applicable, the extent to which the person was responsible for the causes of a company or overseas company becoming insolvent.

3 The frequency of conduct of the person which falls within paragraph 1 or 2.

4 The nature and extent of any loss or harm caused, or any potential loss or harm which could have been caused, by the person's conduct in relation to a company or overseas company.

Additional matters to be taken into account where person is or has been a director

5 Any misfeasance or breach of any fiduciary duty by the director in relation to a company or overseas company.

6 Any material breach of any legislative or other obligation of the director which applies as a result of being a director of a company or overseas company.

7 The frequency of conduct of the director which falls within paragraph 5 or 6.

Interpretation

8 Subsections (1A) to (2A) of section 6 apply for the purposes of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of that section.

9 In this Schedule "director" includes a shadow director."

107 Reports of office-holders on conduct of directors of insolvent companies

(1) The Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 is amended in accordance with subsections (2) to (4).

(2) After section 7 insert—

"7A Office-holder's report on conduct of directors

(1) The office-holder in respect of a company which is insolvent must prepare a report (a "conduct report") about the conduct of each person who was a director of the company—
  (a) on the insolvency date, or
  (b) at any time during the period of 3 years ending with that date.

(2) For the purposes of this section a company is insolvent if—
  (a) the company is in liquidation and at the time it went into liquidation its assets were insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up,
  (b) the company has entered administration, or
  (c) an administrative receiver of the company has been appointed;

and subsection (1A) of section 6 applies for the purposes of this section as it applies for the purpose of that section.

(3) A conduct report must, in relation to each person, describe any conduct of the person which may assist the Secretary of State in deciding whether to exercise the power under section 7(1) or (2A) in relation to the person.

(4) The office-holder must send the conduct report to the Secretary of State before the end of—
  (a) the period of 3 months beginning with the insolvency date, or
  (b) such other longer period as the Secretary of State considers appropriate in the particular circumstances.

(5) If new information comes to the attention of an office-holder, the office-holder must send that information to the Secretary of State as soon as reasonably practicable.

(6) "New information" is information which an office-holder considers should have been included in a conduct report prepared in relation to the company, or would have been so included had it been available before the report was sent.

(7) If there is more than one office-holder in respect of a company at any particular time (because the company is insolvent by virtue of falling within more than one paragraph of subsection (2) at that time), subsection (1) applies only to the first of the office-holders to be appointed.

(8) In the case of a company which is at different times insolvent by virtue of falling within one or more different paragraphs of subsection (2)—
  (a) the references in subsection (1) to the insolvency date are to be read as references to the first such date during the period in which the company is insolvent, and
  (b) subsection (1) does not apply to an office-holder if at any time during the period in which the company is insolvent a conduct report has already been prepared and sent to the Secretary of State.

(9) The "office-holder" in respect of a company which is insolvent is—

(a) in the case of a company being wound up by the court in England and Wales, the official receiver;
(b) in the case of a company being wound up otherwise, the liquidator;
(c) in the case of a company in administration, the administrator;
(d) in the case of a company of which there is an administrative receiver, the receiver.

(10) The "insolvency date"—
(a) in the case of a company being wound up by the court, means the date on which the court makes the winding-up order (see section 125 of the Insolvency Act 1986);
(b) in the case of a company being wound up by way of a members' voluntary winding up, means the date on which the liquidator forms the opinion that the company will be unable to pay its debts in full (together with interest at the official rate) within the period stated in the directors' declaration of solvency under section 89 of the Insolvency Act 1986;
(c) in the case of a company being wound up by way of a creditors' voluntary winding up where no such declaration under section 89 of that Act has been made, means the date of the passing of the resolution for voluntary winding up;
(d) in the case of a company which has entered administration, means the date the company did so;
(e) in the case of a company in respect of which an administrative receiver has been appointed, means the date of that appointment.

(11) For the purposes of subsection (10)(e), any appointment of an administrative receiver to replace an administrative receiver who has died or vacated office pursuant to section 45 of the Insolvency Act 1986 is to be ignored.

(12) In this section—
"court" has the same meaning as in section 6;
"director" includes a shadow director."

(3) In section 7 (disqualification order or undertaking and reporting provisions), omit subsection (3).

(4) For the heading of section 7 substitute "Disqualification orders under section 6: applications and acceptance of undertakings".

(5) In consequence of the repeal made by subsection (3), in Schedule 17 to the Enterprise Act 2002, omit paragraph 42.

Director disqualification: other amendments

108 Unfit directors of insolvent companies: extension of period for applying for disqualification order

(1) In section 7(2) of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (period within which application may be made for disqualification order against unfit director of insolvent company), for "2 years" substitute "3 years".

(2) Subsection (1) applies only to an application relating to a company which has become insolvent after the commencement of that subsection.

(3) Section 6(2) of the 1986 Act (meaning of "becoming insolvent") applies for the purposes of subsection (2) as it applies for the purposes of section 6 of that Act.

109 Directors: removal of restriction on application for disqualification order

(1) In section 8 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (disqualification of director after investigation of company)—
  (a) in subsection (1), omit "from investigative material",
  (b) omit subsection (1A), and
  (c) in subsection (2A), omit "from such report, information or documents".

(2) For the heading of that section substitute "Disqualification of director on finding of unfitness".

Compensation awards

110 Compensation orders and undertakings

After section 15 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 insert—

"Compensation orders and undertakings

15A Compensation orders and undertakings

(1) The court may make a compensation order against a person on the application of the Secretary of State if it is satisfied that the conditions mentioned in subsection (3) are met.

(2) If it appears to the Secretary of State that the conditions mentioned in subsection (3) are met in respect of a person who has offered to give the Secretary of State a compensation undertaking, the Secretary of State may accept the undertaking instead of applying, or proceeding with an application, for a compensation order.

(3) The conditions are that—
  (a) the person is subject to a disqualification order or disqualification undertaking under this Act, and
  (b) conduct for which the person is subject to the order or undertaking has caused loss to one or more creditors of an insolvent company of which the person has at any time been a director.

(4) An "insolvent company" is a company that is or has been insolvent and a company becomes insolvent if—
  (a) the company goes into liquidation at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up,
  (b) the company enters administration, or
  (c) an administrative receiver of the company is appointed.

(5) The Secretary of State may apply for a compensation order at any time before the end of the period of two years beginning with the date on

which the disqualification order referred to in paragraph (a) of subsection (3) was made, or the disqualification undertaking referred to in that paragraph was accepted.

(6) In the case of a person subject to a disqualification order under section 8ZA or 8ZD, or a disqualification undertaking under section 8ZC or 8ZE, the reference in subsection (3)(b) to conduct is a reference to the conduct of the main transgressor in relation to which the person has exercised the requisite amount of influence.

(7) In this section and sections 15B and 15C "the court" means—
- (a) in a case where a disqualification order has been made, the court that made the order,
- (b) in any other case, the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

15B Amounts payable under compensation orders and undertakings

(1) A compensation order is an order requiring the person against whom it is made to pay an amount specified in the order—
- (a) to the Secretary of State for the benefit of—
  - (i) a creditor or creditors specified in the order;
  - (ii) a class or classes of creditor so specified;
- (b) as a contribution to the assets of a company so specified.

(2) A compensation undertaking is an undertaking to pay an amount specified in the undertaking—
- (a) to the Secretary of State for the benefit of—
  - (i) a creditor or creditors specified in the undertaking;
  - (ii) a class or classes of creditor so specified;
- (b) as a contribution to the assets of a company so specified.

(3) When specifying an amount the court (in the case of an order) and the Secretary of State (in the case of an undertaking) must in particular have regard to—
- (a) the amount of the loss caused;
- (b) the nature of the conduct mentioned in section 15A(3)(b);
- (c) whether the person has made any other financial contribution in recompense for the conduct (whether under a statutory provision or otherwise).

(4) An amount payable by virtue of subsection (2) under a compensation undertaking is recoverable as if payable under a court order.

(5) An amount payable under a compensation order or compensation undertaking is provable as a bankruptcy debt.

15C Variation and revocation of compensation undertakings

(1) The court may, on the application of a person who is subject to a compensation undertaking—
- (a) reduce the amount payable under the undertaking, or
- (b) provide for the undertaking not to have effect.

(2) On the hearing of an application under subsection (1), the Secretary of State must appear and call the attention of the court to any matters

which the Secretary of State considers relevant, and may give evidence or call witnesses."

Consequential amendments and corresponding provision for Northern Ireland

111 Sections 104 to 110: consequential and related amendments

Schedule 7 makes amendments to the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986, and other enactments, which are consequential on or related to the amendments made to that Act by the preceding provisions of this Part.

112 Provision for Northern Ireland corresponding to sections 104 to 111

Schedule 8 makes provision for Northern Ireland which corresponds to that made by sections 104 to 111.

Bankruptcy: Scotland and Northern Ireland

113 Disqualification as director: bankruptcy, etc in Scotland and Northern Ireland

(1) For subsections (1) and (2) of section 11 of the Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 (undischarged bankrupts) substitute—

"(1) It is an offence for a person to act as director of a company or directly or indirectly to take part in or be concerned in the promotion, formation or management of a company, without the leave of the court, at a time when any of the circumstances mentioned in subsection (2) apply to the person.

(2) The circumstances are—

(a) the person is an undischarged bankrupt—

(i) in England and Wales or Scotland, or

(ii) in Northern Ireland,

(b) a bankruptcy restrictions order or undertaking is in force in respect of the person under—

(i) the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 or the Insolvency Act 1986, or

(ii) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989,

(c) a debt relief restrictions order or undertaking is in force in respect of the person under—

(i) the Insolvency Act 1986, or

(ii) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989,

(d) a moratorium period under a debt relief order applies in relation to the person under—

(i) the Insolvency Act 1986, or

(ii) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989.

(2A) In subsection (1) "the court" means—

(a) for the purposes of subsection (2)(a)(i)—

(i) the court by which the person was adjudged bankrupt, or

(ii) in Scotland, the court by which sequestration of the person's estate was awarded or, if awarded other than by the court, the court which would have jurisdiction in respect of sequestration of the person's estate,

(b) for the purposes of subsection (2)(b)(i)—

(i) the court which made the order,

(ii) in Scotland, if the order has been made other than by the court, the court to which the person may appeal against the order, or

(iii) the court to which the person may make an application for annulment of the undertaking,

(c) for the purposes of subsection (2)(c)(i)—

(i) the court which made the order, or

(ii) the court to which the person may make an application for annulment of the undertaking,

(d) for the purposes of subsection (2)(d)(i), the court to which the person would make an application under section 251M(1) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (if the person were dissatisfied as mentioned there),

(e) for the purposes of paragraphs (a)(ii), (b)(ii), (c)(ii) and (d)(ii) of subsection (2), the High Court of Northern Ireland."

(2) In section 24 of that Act (extent), for subsection (2) substitute—

"(2) Subsections (1) to (2A) of section 11 also extend to Northern Ireland."

114 Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002: bankruptcy, etc in England and Wales or Scotland

For paragraph (1) of Article 15 of the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4)) (undischarged bankrupts) substitute—

"(1) It is an offence for a person to act as director of a company or directly or indirectly to take part in or be concerned in the promotion, formation or management of a company, without the leave of the court, at a time when any of the circumstances mentioned in paragraph (1A) apply to the person.

(1A) The circumstances are—

(a) the person is an undischarged bankrupt—

(i) in Northern Ireland, or

(ii) in England and Wales or Scotland,

(b) a bankruptcy restrictions order or undertaking is in force in respect of the person under—

(i) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, or

(ii) the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 or the Insolvency Act 1986,

(c) a debt relief restrictions order or undertaking is in force in respect of the person under—

(i) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, or

(ii) the Insolvency Act 1986,

(d) a moratorium period under a debt relief order applies in relation to the person under—
  (i) the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, or
  (ii) the Insolvency Act 1986.

(1B) In paragraph (1) "the court" means—
(a) for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (a)(i), (b)(i), (c)(i) and (d)(i) of paragraph (1A), the High Court,
(b) for the purposes of paragraph (1A)(a)(ii)—
  (i) the court by which the person was adjudged bankrupt, or
  (ii) in Scotland, the court by which sequestration of the person's estate was awarded or, if awarded other than by the court, the court which would have jurisdiction in respect of sequestration of the person's estate,
(c) for the purposes of paragraph (1A)(b)(ii)—
  (i) the court which made the order,
  (ii) in Scotland, if the order has been made other than by the court, the court to which the person may appeal against the order, or
  (iii) the court to which the person may make an application for annulment of the undertaking,
(d) for the purposes of paragraph (1A)(c)(ii)—
  (i) the court which made the order, or
  (ii) the court to which the person may make an application for annulment of the undertaking,
(e) for the purposes of paragraph (1A)(d)(ii), the court to which the person would make an application under section 251M(1) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (if the person were dissatisfied as mentioned there)."

115 Disqualification as insolvency practitioner: bankruptcy, etc in Scotland or Northern Ireland

In section 390 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (persons not qualified to act as insolvency practitioners)—
(a) in subsection (4)—
  (i) in paragraph (a), after "bankrupt" insert "under this Act or the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989";
  (ii) in paragraph (aa), after "a debt relief order" insert "under this Act or the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989";
(b) for subsection (5) substitute—

"(5) A person is not qualified to act as an insolvency practitioner while there is in force in respect of that person—
  (a) a bankruptcy restrictions order under this Act, the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985 or the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989, or
  (b) a debt relief restrictions order under this Act or that Order."

116 Disqualification as insolvency practitioner in Northern Ireland: bankruptcy, etc in England and Wales or Scotland

(1) Article 349 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)) (persons not qualified to act as insolvency practitioners) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph (4)—
  (a) in sub-paragraph (a), after "bankrupt" insert "under this Order or the 1986 Act";
  (b) in sub-paragraph (aa), after "a debt relief order" insert "under this Order or the 1986 Act".

(3) For paragraph (5) substitute—

"(5) A person is not qualified to act as an insolvency practitioner while there is in force in respect of that person—
  (a) a bankruptcy restrictions order under this Order, the 1986 Act or the Bankruptcy (Scotland) Act 1985, or
  (b) a debt relief restrictions order under this Order or the 1986 Act.

(6) In this Article "the 1986 Act" means the Insolvency Act 1986."

(4) In consequence of the amendment made by subsection (3), omit—
  (a) paragraph 4 of Schedule 6 to the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10));
  (b) paragraph 4(9)(b) of the Schedule to the Debt Relief Act (Northern Ireland) 2010 (c. 16 (N.I.)).

PART 10

INSOLVENCY

Office-holder actions

117 Power for administrator to bring claim for fraudulent or wrongful trading

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 246 insert—

"Administration: penalisation of directors etc

246ZA Fraudulent trading: administration

(1) If while a company is in administration it appears that any business of the company has been carried on with intent to defraud creditors of the company or creditors of any other person, or for any fraudulent purpose, the following has effect.

(2) The court, on the application of the administrator, may declare that any persons who were knowingly parties to the carrying on of the business in the manner mentioned in subsection (1) are to be liable to make such contributions (if any) to the company's assets as the court thinks proper.

246ZB Wrongful trading: administration

(1) Subject to subsection (3), if while a company is in administration it appears that subsection (2) applies in relation to a person who is or has been a director of the company, the court, on the application of the administrator, may declare that that person is to be liable to make such contribution (if any) to the company's assets as the court thinks proper.

(2) This subsection applies in relation to a person if—
  (a) the company has entered insolvent administration,
  (b) at some time before the company entered administration, that person knew or ought to have concluded that there was no reasonable prospect that the company would avoid entering insolvent administration or going into insolvent liquidation, and
  (c) the person was a director of the company at that time.

(3) The court must not make a declaration under this section with respect to any person if it is satisfied that, after the condition specified in subsection (2)(b) was first satisfied in relation to the person, the person took every step with a view to minimising the potential loss to the company's creditors as (on the assumption that the person had knowledge of the matter mentioned in subsection (2)(b)) the person ought to have taken.

(4) For the purposes of subsections (2) and (3), the facts which a director of a company ought to know or ascertain, the conclusions which the director ought to reach and the steps which the director ought to take are those which would be known or ascertained, or reached or taken, by a reasonably diligent person having both—
  (a) the general knowledge, skill and experience that may reasonably be expected of a person carrying out the same functions as are carried out by that director in relation to the company, and
  (b) the general knowledge, skill and experience that that director has.

(5) The reference in subsection (4) to the functions carried out in relation to a company by a director of the company includes any functions which the director does not carry out but which have been entrusted to the director.

(6) For the purposes of this section—
  (a) a company enters insolvent administration if it enters administration at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the administration;
  (b) a company goes into insolvent liquidation if it goes into liquidation at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up.

(7) In this section "director" includes shadow director.

(8) This section is without prejudice to section 246ZA.

246ZC Proceedings under section 246ZA or 246ZB

Section 215 applies for the purposes of an application under section 246ZA or 246ZB as it applies for the purposes of an application under section 213 but as if the reference in subsection (1) of section 215 to the liquidator was a reference to the administrator."

(3) In section 214 (wrongful trading)—

(a) in subsection (2)(b), after "liquidation" insert "or entering insolvent administration",

(b) in subsection (3), for the words from "assuming" to "liquidation" substitute "on the assumption that he had knowledge of the matter mentioned in subsection (2)(b)", and

(c) after subsection (6) insert—

"(6A) For the purposes of this section a company enters insolvent administration if it enters administration at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the administration."

118 Power for liquidator or administrator to assign causes of action

After section 246ZC of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 117) insert—

"Power to assign certain causes of action

246ZD Power to assign

(1) This section applies in the case of a company where—

(a) the company enters administration, or

(b) the company goes into liquidation;

and "the office-holder" means the administrator or the liquidator, as the case may be.

(2) The office-holder may assign a right of action (including the proceeds of an action) arising under any of the following—

(a) section 213 or 246ZA (fraudulent trading);

(b) section 214 or 246ZB (wrongful trading);

(c) section 238 (transactions at an undervalue (England and Wales));

(d) section 239 (preferences (England and Wales));

(e) section 242 (gratuitous alienations (Scotland));

(f) section 243 (unfair preferences (Scotland));

(g) section 244 (extortionate credit transactions)."

119 Application of proceeds of office-holder claims

After section 176ZA of the Insolvency Act 1986 insert—

"176ZB Application of proceeds of office-holder claims

(1) This section applies where—

(a) there is a floating charge (whether created before or after the coming into force of this section) which relates to property of a company which—
  (i) is in administration, or
  (ii) has gone into liquidation; and
(b) the administrator or the liquidator (referred to in this section as "the office-holder") has—
  (i) brought a claim under any provision mentioned in subsection (3), or
  (ii) made an assignment (or, in Scotland, assignation) in relation to a right of action under any such provision under section 246ZD.

(2) The proceeds of the claim or assignment (or, in Scotland, assignation) are not to be treated as part of the company's net property, that is to say the amount of its property which would be available for satisfaction of claims of holders of debentures secured by, or holders of, any floating charge created by the company.

(3) The provisions are—
  (a) section 213 or 246ZA (fraudulent trading);
  (b) section 214 or 246ZB (wrongful trading);
  (c) section 238 (transactions at an undervalue (England and Wales));
  (d) section 239 (preferences (England and Wales));
  (e) section 242 (gratuitous alienations (Scotland));
  (f) section 243 (unfair preferences (Scotland));
  (g) section 244 (extortionate credit transactions).

(4) Subsection (2) does not apply to a company if or in so far as it is disapplied by—
  (a) a voluntary arrangement in respect of the company, or
  (b) a compromise or arrangement agreed under Part 26 of the Companies Act 2006 (arrangements and reconstructions)."

Removing requirements to seek sanction

120 Exercise of powers by liquidator: removal of need for sanction

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 165 (voluntary winding up: powers of liquidator), for subsections (2) and (3) substitute—

"(2) The liquidator may exercise any of the powers specified in Parts 1 to 3 of Schedule 4."

(3) In section 167 (winding up by the court: powers of liquidator), for subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) Where a company is being wound up by the court, the liquidator may exercise any of the powers specified in Parts 1 to 3 of Schedule 4."

(4) In section 169 (supplementary powers (Scotland)), omit subsection (1).

(5) In Part 2 of Schedule 3 (appeals from orders in Scotland: orders which take effect until matter disposed of by Inner House), omit the entry relating to orders under section 167 or 169.

(6) In Schedule 4 (powers of liquidator in a winding up)—
  (a) in paragraph 3, omit "In the case of a winding up in Scotland,",
  (b) omit paragraph 6A, and
  (c) omit the headings for each of Parts 1 to 3.

121 Exercise of powers by trustee in bankruptcy: removal of need for sanction

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 314 (bankruptcy: powers of trustee)—
  (a) for subsection (1) substitute—

    "(1) The trustee may exercise any of the powers specified in Parts 1 and 2 of Schedule 5.",
  (b) in subsection (2), omit "With the permission of the creditors' committee or the court,", and
  (c) omit subsections (3) and (4).

(3) In Schedule 5 (powers of trustee in bankruptcy), omit the headings for each of Parts 1 to 3.

Position of creditors

122 Abolition of requirements to hold meetings: company insolvency

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 246ZD (as inserted by section 118) insert—

"Decisions by creditors and contributories

246ZE Decisions by creditors and contributories: general

(1) This section applies where, for the purposes of this Group of Parts, a person ("P") seeks a decision about any matter from a company's creditors or contributories.

(2) The decision may be made by any qualifying decision procedure P thinks fit, except that it may not be made by a creditors' meeting or (as the case may be) a contributories' meeting unless subsection (3) applies.

(3) This subsection applies if at least the minimum number of creditors or (as the case may be) contributories make a request to P in writing that the decision be made by a creditors' meeting or (as the case may be) a contributories' meeting.

(4) If subsection (3) applies P must summon a creditors' meeting or (as the case may be) a contributories' meeting.

(5) Subsection (2) is subject to any provision of this Act, the rules or any other legislation, or any order of the court—

(a) requiring a decision to be made, or prohibiting a decision from being made, by a particular qualifying decision procedure (other than a creditors' meeting or a contributories' meeting);
(b) permitting or requiring a decision to be made by a creditors' meeting or a contributories' meeting.

(6) Section 246ZF provides that in certain cases the deemed consent procedure may be used instead of a qualifying decision procedure.

(7) For the purposes of subsection (3) the "minimum number" of creditors or contributories is any of the following—
(a) 10% in value of the creditors or contributories;
(b) 10% in number of the creditors or contributories;
(c) 10 creditors or contributories.

(8) The references in subsection (7) to creditors are to creditors of any class, even where a decision is sought only from creditors of a particular class.

(9) In this section references to a meeting are to a meeting where the creditors or (as the case may be) contributories are invited to be present together at the same place (whether or not it is possible to attend the meeting without being present at that place).

(10) Except as provided by subsection (8), references in this section to creditors include creditors of a particular class.

(11) In this Group of Parts "qualifying decision procedure" means a procedure prescribed or authorised under paragraph 8A of Schedule 8.

246ZF Deemed consent procedure

(1) The deemed consent procedure may be used instead of a qualifying decision procedure where a company's creditors or contributories are to make a decision about any matter, unless—
(a) a decision about the matter is required by virtue of this Act, the rules, or any other legislation to be made by a qualifying decision procedure, or
(b) the court orders that a decision about the matter is to be made by a qualifying decision procedure.

(2) If the rules provide for a company's creditors or contributories to make a decision about the remuneration of any person, they must provide that the decision is to be made by a qualifying decision procedure.

(3) The deemed consent procedure is that the relevant creditors (other than opted-out creditors) or (as the case may be) the relevant contributories are given notice of—
(a) the matter about which they are to make a decision,
(b) the decision that the person giving the notice proposes should be made (the "proposed decision"),
(c) the effect of subsections (4) and (5), and
(d) the procedure for objecting to the proposed decision.

(4) If less than the appropriate number of relevant creditors or (as the case may be) relevant contributories object to the proposed decision in accordance with the procedure set out in the notice, the creditors or (as

the case may be) the contributories are to be treated as having made the proposed decision.

(5) Otherwise—

(a) the creditors or (as the case may be) the contributories are to be treated as not having made a decision about the matter in question, and

(b) if a decision about that matter is again sought from the creditors or (as the case may be) the contributories, it must be sought using a qualifying decision procedure.

(6) For the purposes of subsection (4) the "appropriate number" of relevant creditors or relevant contributories is 10% in value of those creditors or contributories.

(7) "Relevant creditors" means the creditors who, if the decision were to be made by a qualifying decision procedure, would be entitled to vote in the procedure.

(8) "Relevant contributories" means the contributories who, if the decision were to be made by a qualifying decision procedure, would be entitled to vote in the procedure.

(9) In this section references to creditors include creditors of a particular class.

(10) The rules may make further provision about the deemed consent procedure.

246ZG Power to amend sections 246ZE and 246ZF

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend section 246ZE so as to change the definition of—

(a) the minimum number of creditors;

(b) the minimum number of contributories.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend section 246ZF so as to change the definition of—

(a) the appropriate number of relevant creditors;

(b) the appropriate number of relevant contributories.

(3) Regulations under this section may define the minimum number or the appropriate number by reference to any one or more of—

(a) a proportion in value,

(b) a proportion in number,

(c) an absolute number,

and the definition may include alternative, cumulative or relative requirements.

(4) Regulations under subsection (1) may define the minimum number of creditors or contributories by reference to all creditors or contributories, or by reference to creditors or contributories of a particular description.

(5) Regulations under this section may make provision that will result in section 246ZE or 246ZF having different definitions for different cases, including—

(a) for creditors and for contributories,
(b) for different kinds of decisions.

(6) Regulations under this section may make transitional provision.

(7) The power of the Secretary of State to make regulations under this section is exercisable by statutory instrument.

(8) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament."

(3) In Schedule 8 (provisions which may be included in company insolvency rules), after paragraph 8 insert—

"8A (1) Provision about the making of decisions by creditors and contributories, including provision—
(a) prescribing particular procedures by which creditors and contributories may make decisions;
(b) authorising the use of other procedures for creditors and contributories to make decisions, if those procedures comply with prescribed requirements.

(2) Provision under sub-paragraph (1) may in particular include provision about—
(a) how creditors and contributories may request that a creditors' meeting or a contributories' meeting be held,
(b) the rights of creditors, contributories and others to be given notice of, and participate in, procedures,
(c) creditors' and contributories' rights to vote in procedures,
(d) the period within which any right to participate or vote is to be exercised,
(e) the proportion of creditors or contributories that must vote for a proposal for it to be approved,
(f) how the value of any debt or contribution should be determined,
(g) the time at which decisions taken by a procedure are to be treated as having been made."

(4) In section 251 (interpretation of first Group of Parts)—
(a) after the definition of "the court" insert—
""deemed consent procedure" means the deemed consent procedure provided for by section 246ZF;";
(b) after the definition of "prescribed" insert—
""qualifying decision procedure" has the meaning given by section 246ZE(11);".

123 Abolition of requirements to hold meetings: individual insolvency

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 379 insert—

"Creditors' decisions

379ZA Creditors' decisions: general

(1) This section applies where, for the purposes of this Group of Parts, a person ("P") seeks a decision from an individual's creditors about any matter.

(2) The decision may be made by any creditors' decision procedure P thinks fit, except that it may not be made by a creditors' meeting unless subsection (3) applies.

(3) This subsection applies if at least the minimum number of creditors request in writing that the decision be made by a creditors' meeting.

(4) If subsection (3) applies, P must summon a creditors' meeting.

(5) Subsection (2) is subject to any provision of this Act, the rules or any other legislation, or any order of the court—
  (a) requiring a decision to be made, or prohibiting a decision from being made, by a particular creditors' decision procedure (other than a creditors' meeting);
  (b) permitting or requiring a decision to be made by a creditors' meeting.

(6) Section 379ZB provides that in certain cases the deemed consent procedure may be used instead of a creditors' decision procedure.

(7) For the purposes of subsection (3) the "minimum number" of creditors is any of the following—
  (a) 10% in value of the creditors;
  (b) 10% in number of the creditors;
  (c) 10 creditors.

(8) The references in subsection (7) to creditors are to creditors of any class, even where a decision is sought only from creditors of a particular class.

(9) In this section references to a meeting are to a meeting where the creditors are invited to be present together at the same place (whether or not it is possible to attend the meeting without being present at that place).

(10) Except as provided by subsection (8), references in this section to creditors include creditors of a particular class.

(11) In this Group of Parts "creditors' decision procedure" means a procedure prescribed or authorised under paragraph 11A of Schedule 9.

379ZB Deemed consent procedure

(1) The deemed consent procedure may be used instead of a creditors' decision procedure where an individual's creditors are to make a decision about any matter, unless—

(a) a decision about the matter is required by virtue of this Act, the rules or any other legislation to be made by a creditors' decision procedure, or
(b) the court orders that a decision about the matter is to be made by a creditors' decision procedure.

(2) If the rules provide for an individual's creditors to make a decision about the remuneration of any person, they must provide that the decision is to be made by a creditors' decision procedure.

(3) The deemed consent procedure is that the relevant creditors (other than opted-out creditors) are given notice of—
(a) the matter about which the creditors are to make a decision,
(b) the decision the person giving the notice proposes should be made (the "proposed decision"),
(c) the effect of subsections (4) and (5), and
(d) the procedure for objecting to the proposed decision.

(4) If less than the appropriate number of relevant creditors object to the proposed decision in accordance with the procedure set out in the notice, the creditors are to be treated as having made the proposed decision.

(5) Otherwise—
(a) the creditors are to be treated as not having made a decision about the matter in question, and
(b) if a decision about that matter is again sought from the creditors, it must be sought using a creditors' decision procedure.

(6) For the purposes of subsection (4) the "appropriate number" of relevant creditors is 10% in value of those creditors.

(7) "Relevant creditors" means the creditors who, if the decision were to be made by a creditors' decision procedure, would be entitled to vote in the procedure.

(8) In this section references to creditors include creditors of a particular class.

(9) The rules may make further provision about the deemed consent procedure.

379ZC Power to amend sections 379ZA and 379ZB

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend section 379ZA so as to change the definition of the minimum number of creditors.

(2) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend section 379ZB so as to change the definition of the appropriate number of relevant creditors.

(3) Regulations under this section may define the minimum number or the appropriate number by reference to any one or more of—
(a) a proportion in value,
(b) a proportion in number,
(c) an absolute number,

and the definition may include alternative, cumulative or relative requirements.

(4) Regulations under subsection (1) may define the minimum number of creditors by reference to all creditors, or by reference to creditors of a particular description.

(5) Regulations under this section may make provision that will result in section 379ZA or 379ZB having different definitions for different cases, including for different kinds of decisions.

(6) Regulations under this section may make transitional provision.

(7) The power of the Secretary of State to make regulations under this section is exercisable by statutory instrument.

(8) A statutory instrument containing regulations under this section may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, each House of Parliament."

(3) In Schedule 9 (provisions which may be included in individual insolvency rules), after paragraph 11 insert—

"11A(1) Provision about the making of decisions by creditors, including provision—

(a) prescribing particular procedures by which creditors may make decisions;

(b) authorising the use of other procedures for creditors to make decisions, if those procedures comply with prescribed requirements.

(2) Provision under sub-paragraph (1) may in particular include provision about—

(a) how creditors may request that a creditors' meeting be held,

(b) the rights of creditors and others to be given notice of, and participate in, procedures,

(c) creditors' rights to vote in procedures,

(d) the period within which any right to participate or vote is to be exercised,

(e) the proportion of creditors that must vote for a proposal for it to be approved,

(f) how the value of any debt should be determined,

(g) the time at which decisions taken by a procedure are to be treated as having been made."

(4) In section 385(1) (miscellaneous definitions relating to individual insolvency)—

(a) after the definition of "the court" insert—

""creditors' decision procedure" has the meaning given by section 379ZA(11);";

(b) after the definition of "debt relief order" insert—

""deemed consent procedure" means the deemed consent procedure provided for by section 379ZB;".

124 Ability for creditors to opt not to receive certain notices: company insolvency

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) For the italic heading before section 246B substitute—

"Giving of notices etc by office-holders".

(3) After section 246B insert—

"246C Creditors' ability to opt out of receiving certain notices

(1) Any provision of the rules which requires an office-holder of a company to give a notice to creditors of the company does not apply, in circumstances prescribed by the rules, in relation to opted-out creditors.

(2) Subsection (1)—
(a) does not apply in relation to a notice of a distribution or proposed distribution to creditors;
(b) is subject to any order of the court requiring a notice to be given to all creditors (or all creditors of a particular category).

(3) Except as provided by the rules, a creditor may participate and vote in a qualifying decision procedure or a deemed consent procedure even though, by virtue of being an opted-out creditor, the creditor does not receive notice of it.

(4) In this section—
"give" includes deliver, furnish or send;
"notice" includes any document or information in any other form;
"office-holder", in relation to a company, means—
(a) a liquidator, provisional liquidator, administrator or administrative receiver of the company,
(b) a receiver appointed under section 51 in relation to any property of the company, or
(c) the supervisor of a voluntary arrangement which has taken effect under Part 1 in relation to the company."

(4) After section 248 insert—

"248A "Opted-out creditor"

(1) For the purposes of this Group of Parts "opted-out creditor", in relation to an office-holder of a company, means a person who—
(a) is a creditor of the company, and
(b) in accordance with the rules has elected (or is deemed to have elected) to be (and not to cease to be) an opted-out creditor in relation to the office-holder.

(2) In this section, "office-holder", in relation to a company, means—
(a) a liquidator, provisional liquidator, administrator or administrative receiver of the company,
(b) a receiver appointed under section 51 in relation to any property of the company, or

(c) the supervisor of a voluntary arrangement which has taken effect under Part 1 in relation to the company."

(5) In Schedule 8 (provisions which may be included in company insolvency rules), after paragraph 5 insert—

"5A Provision for enabling a creditor of a company to elect to be, or to cease to be, an opted-out creditor in relation to an office-holder of the company (within the meaning of section 248A), including, in particular, provision—

(a) for requiring an office-holder to provide information to creditors about how they may elect to be, or cease to be, opted-out creditors;

(b) for deeming an election to be, or cease to be, an opted-out creditor in relation to a particular office-holder of a company to be such an election also in relation to any other office-holder of the company."

125 Ability for creditors to opt not to receive certain notices: individual insolvency

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) For the italic heading before section 379B substitute—

"Giving of notices etc by office-holders".

(3) After section 379B insert—

"379C Creditors' ability to opt out of receiving certain notices

(1) Any provision of the rules which requires an office-holder to give a notice to creditors of an individual does not apply, in circumstances prescribed by the rules, in relation to opted-out creditors.

(2) Subsection (1)—

(a) does not apply in relation to a notice of a distribution or proposed distribution to creditors;

(b) is subject to any order of the court requiring a notice to be given to all creditors (or all creditors of a particular category).

(3) Except as provided by the rules, a creditor may participate and vote in a qualifying decision procedure or a deemed consent procedure even though, by virtue of being an opted-out creditor, the creditor does not receive notice of it.

(4) In this section—

"give" includes deliver, furnish or send;

"notice" includes any document or information in any other form;

"office-holder", in relation to an individual, means—

(a) where a bankruptcy order is made against the individual, the official receiver or the trustee in bankruptcy;

(b) where an interim receiver of the individual's property is appointed, the interim receiver;

(c) the supervisor of a voluntary arrangement approved under Part 8 in relation to the individual."

(4) After section 383 insert—

"383A "Opted-out creditor"

(1) For the purposes of this Group of Parts "opted-out creditor" in relation to an office-holder for an individual means a person who—
(a) is a creditor of the individual, and
(b) in accordance with the rules has elected (or is deemed to have elected) to be (and not to cease to be) an opted-out creditor in relation to the office-holder.

(2) In this section, "office-holder", in relation to an individual, means—
(a) where a bankruptcy order is made against the individual, the official receiver or the trustee in bankruptcy;
(b) where an interim receiver of the individual's property is appointed, the interim receiver;
(c) the supervisor of a voluntary arrangement approved under Part 8 in relation to the individual."

(5) In Schedule 9 (provisions capable of inclusion in individual insolvency rules), after paragraph 7 insert—

"7A Provision for enabling a creditor of an individual to elect to be, or to cease to be, an opted-out creditor in relation to an office-holder for the individual (within the meaning of section 383A), including, in particular, provision—
(a) for requiring an office-holder to provide information to creditors about how they may elect to be, or cease to be, opted-out creditors;
(b) for deeming an election to be, or cease to be, an opted-out creditor in relation to a particular office-holder for an individual to be such an election also in relation to any other office-holder for the individual."

126 Sections 122 to 125: further amendments

Schedule 9 (abolition of requirements to hold meetings; opted-out creditors)—
(a) makes amendments relating to sections 122 to 125, and
(b) removes requirements to hold a general meeting of a company when the company's affairs are fully wound up.

Administration

127 Extension of administrator's term of office

In paragraph 76(2)(b) of Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (administrator's term of office may be extended for up to six months by consent) for "six months" substitute "one year".

128 Administration: payments to unsecured creditors

(1) Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (administration) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph 65(3) (restrictions on distribution to unsecured creditors) for "unless" substitute "unless—

(a) the distribution is made by virtue of section 176A(2)(a), or

(b) ".

(3) In paragraph 83 (power to move from administration to creditors' voluntary liquidation), in sub-paragraphs (1)(b) and (2)(b), after "any)" insert "which is not a distribution by virtue of section 176A(2)(a)".

129 Administration: sales to connected persons

(1) Schedule B1 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (administration) is amended as follows.

(2) Paragraph 60 (power of administrators) becomes sub-paragraph (1) of that paragraph.

(3) After that sub-paragraph insert—

"(2) But the power to sell, hire out or otherwise dispose of property is subject to any regulations that may be made under paragraph 60A."

(4) After paragraph 60 insert—

"60A(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for—

(a) prohibiting, or

(b) imposing requirements or conditions in relation to,

the disposal, hiring out or sale of property of a company by the administrator to a connected person in circumstances specified in the regulations.

(2) Regulations under this paragraph may in particular require the approval of, or provide for the imposition of requirements or conditions by—

(a) creditors of the company,

(b) the court, or

(c) a person of a description specified in the regulations.

(3) In sub-paragraph (1), "connected person", in relation to a company, means—

(a) a relevant person in relation to the company, or

(b) a company connected with the company.

(4) For the purposes of sub-paragraph (3)—

(a) "relevant person", in relation to a company, means—

(i) a director or other officer, or shadow director, of the company;

(ii) a non-employee associate of such a person;

(iii) a non-employee associate of the company;

(b) a company is connected with another if any relevant person of one is or has been a relevant person of the other.

(5) In sub-paragraph (4), "non-employee associate" of a person means a person who is an associate of that person otherwise than by virtue of employing or being employed by that person.

(6) Subsection (10) of section 435 (extended definition of company) applies for the purposes of sub-paragraphs (3) to (5) as it applies for the purposes of that section.

(7) Regulations under this paragraph may—

(a) make different provision for different purposes;

(b) make incidental, consequential, supplemental and transitional provision.

(8) Regulations under this paragraph are to be made by statutory instrument.

(9) Regulations under this paragraph may not be made unless a draft of the statutory instrument containing the regulations has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

(10) This paragraph expires at the end of the period of 5 years beginning with the day on which it comes into force unless the power conferred by it is exercised during that period."

130 Attachment of floating charges on administration (Scotland)

(1) Paragraph 115 of Schedule B1 (administration) to the Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) After sub-paragraph (1) insert—

"(1A) In Scotland, sub-paragraph (1B) applies in connection with the giving by the court of permission as provided for in paragraph 65(3)(b).

(1B) On the giving by the court of such permission, any floating charge granted by the company shall, unless it has already so attached, attach to the property which is subject to the charge."

(3) In sub-paragraph (3), omit the words from "and" to the end.

(4) After that sub-paragraph insert—

"(4) Attachment of a floating charge under sub-paragraph (1B) or (3) has effect as if the charge is a fixed security over the property to which it has attached."

Small debts

131 Creditors not required to prove small debts: company insolvency

In Schedule 8 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (provisions capable of inclusion in company insolvency rules) after paragraph 13 insert—

"13A Provision for a creditor who has not proved a small debt to be treated as having done so for purposes relating to the distribution of a company's property (and for provisions of, or contained in legislation made under, this Act to apply accordingly).

"Small debt" means a debt not exceeding an amount prescribed by the rules."

132 Creditors not required to prove small debts: individual insolvency

In Schedule 9 to the Insolvency Act 1986 (provisions capable of inclusion in individual insolvency rules) after paragraph 18 insert—

"18A Provision for a creditor who has not proved a small debt to be treated as having done so for purposes relating to the distribution of a bankrupt's estate (and for provisions of, or contained in legislation made under, this Act to apply accordingly).

"Small debt" means a bankruptcy debt not exceeding an amount prescribed by the rules."

Trustees in bankruptcy

133 Trustees in bankruptcy

(1) In the Insolvency Act 1986, before section 292 insert—

"291A First trustee in bankruptcy

(1) On the making of a bankruptcy order the official receiver becomes trustee of the bankrupt's estate, unless the court appoints another person under subsection (2).

(2) If when the order is made there is a supervisor of a voluntary arrangement approved in relation to the bankrupt under Part 8, the court may on making the order appoint the supervisor of the arrangement as the trustee.

(3) Where a person becomes trustee of a bankrupt's estate under this section, the person must give notice of that fact to the bankrupt's creditors (or, if the court so allows, advertise it in accordance with the court's directions).

(4) A notice or advertisement given by a trustee appointed under subsection (2) must explain the procedure for establishing a creditors' committee under section 301."

(2) Schedule 10 makes consequential amendments.

Voluntary arrangements

134 Time limit for challenging IVAs

In section 262(3)(a) of the Insolvency Act 1986 (time limit for challenging voluntary arrangement), for the words from "the report" to "section 259" substitute "the creditors decided whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement or, where a report was required to be made to the court under section 259(1)(b), the day on which the report was made".

135 Abolition of fast-track voluntary arrangements

(1) Omit sections 263A to 263G of the Insolvency Act 1986 (fast-track voluntary arrangements (England and Wales)) and the cross heading immediately before section 263A.

(2) In consequence of the repeals made by subsection (1), in the Insolvency Act 1986—
  (a) in section 282 (court's power to annul bankruptcy order), in subsection (4), omit "or 263D", and
  (b) in Schedule 4A (bankruptcy restrictions order and undertaking), in paragraph 11, omit ", 263D".

(3) Also in consequence of the repeals made by subsection (1), in the Enterprise Act 2002—
  (a) omit section 264(2) to (4) (orders to extend application of provisions of sections 263B to 263G of the Insolvency Act 1986),
  (b) in Schedule 22, omit paragraph 2 (fast-track voluntary arrangements) and the heading immediately before it, and
  (c) in Schedule 23 (minor and consequential amendments), omit paragraph 4(a) and the "and" immediately after it.

(4) The repeals made by this section have no effect in relation to a case where a debtor has submitted the document and statement mentioned in section 263B(1) to the official receiver before this section comes into force.

Progress reports

136 Voluntary winding-up: progress reports

(1) The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 92A (progress reports in members' voluntary winding-up)—
  (a) in subsection (1), for the words from "in the event" to "one year," substitute "where the company is registered in England and Wales";
  (b) in the heading, omit "at year's end".

(3) In section 104A (progress reports in creditors' voluntary winding-up)—
  (a) in subsection (1), for the words from "If the" to "one year," substitute "Where the company is registered in England and Wales";
  (b) in the heading, omit "at year's end".

(4) In the table in Schedule 10 (punishment of offences)—
  (a) in the entry for section 92A(2), in column 2, omit "at year's end";
  (b) in the entry for section 104A(2), in column 2, omit "at year's end".

Regulation of insolvency practitioners: amendments to existing regime

137 Recognised professional bodies: recognition

(1) In Part 13 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (insolvency practitioners), for section 391 (recognised professional bodies) (as substituted by section 17 of the Deregulation Act 2015) substitute—

"391 Recognised professional bodies

(1) The Secretary of State may by order, if satisfied that a body meets the requirements of subsection (4), declare the body to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with full authorisation or partial authorisation.

(2) The Secretary of State may by order, if satisfied that a body meets the requirements of subsection (4), declare the body to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with partial authorisation only of the kind specified in the order (as to which, see section 390A(1)).

(3) Section 391A makes provision about the making by a body of an application to the Secretary of State for an order under this section.

(4) The requirements are that—
  (a) the body regulates (or is going to regulate) the practice of a profession,
  (b) the body has rules which it is going to maintain and enforce for securing that its insolvency specialist members—
    (i) are fit and proper persons to act as insolvency practitioners, and
    (ii) meet acceptable requirements as to education and practical training and experience, and
  (c) the body's rules and practices for or in connection with authorising persons to act as insolvency practitioners, and its rules and practices for or in connection with regulating persons acting as such, are designed to ensure that the regulatory objectives are met (as to which, see section 391C).

(5) An order of the Secretary of State under this section has effect from such date as is specified in the order.

(6) An order under this section may be revoked by an order under section 391L or 391N (and see section 415A(1)(b)).

(7) In this Part—
  (a) references to members of a recognised professional body are to persons who, whether members of that body or not, are subject to its rules in the practice of the profession in question;
  (b) references to insolvency specialist members of a professional body are to members who are permitted by or under the rules of the body to act as insolvency practitioners.

(8) A reference in this Part to a recognised professional body is to a body recognised under this section (and see sections 391L(6) and 391N(5)).

391A Application for recognition as recognised professional body

(1) An application for an order under section 391(1) or (2) must—
  (a) be made to the Secretary of State in such form and manner as the Secretary of State may require,
  (b) be accompanied by such information as the Secretary of State may require, and
  (c) be supplemented by such additional information as the Secretary of State may require at any time between receiving the application and determining it.

(2) The requirements which may be imposed under subsection (1) may differ as between different applications.

(3) The Secretary of State may require information provided under this section to be in such form, and verified in such manner, as the Secretary of State may specify.

(4) An application for an order under section 391(1) or (2) must be accompanied by—
  (a) a copy of the applicant's rules,
  (b) a copy of the applicant's policies and practices, and
  (c) a copy of any guidance issued by the applicant in writing.

(5) The reference in subsection (4)(c) to guidance issued by the applicant is a reference to guidance or recommendations which are—
  (a) issued or made by it which will apply to its insolvency specialist members or to persons seeking to become such members,
  (b) relevant for the purposes of this Part, and
  (c) intended to have continuing effect,

including guidance or recommendations relating to the admission or expulsion of members.

(6) The Secretary of State may refuse an application for an order under section 391(1) or (2) if the Secretary of State considers that recognition of the body concerned is unnecessary having regard to the existence of one or more other bodies which have been or are likely to be recognised under section 391.

(7) Subsection (8) applies where the Secretary of State refuses an application for an order under section 391(1) or (2); and it applies regardless of whether the application is refused on the ground mentioned in subsection (6), because the Secretary of State is not satisfied as mentioned in section 391(1) or (2) or because a fee has not been paid (see section 415A(1)(b)).

(8) The Secretary of State must give the applicant a written notice of the Secretary of State's decision; and the notice must set out the reasons for refusing the application."

(2) An order under section 391(1) or (2) of the Insolvency Act 1986 made before the coming into force of this section is, following the coming into force of this section, to be treated as if it were made under section 391(1) or (as the case may be) (2) as substituted by subsection (1) of this section.

138 Regulatory objectives

(1) After section 391A of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 137) insert—

"Regulatory objectives

391B Application of regulatory objectives

(1) In discharging regulatory functions, a recognised professional body must, so far as is reasonably practicable, act in a way—
  (a) which is compatible with the regulatory objectives, and
  (b) which the body considers most appropriate for the purpose of meeting those objectives.

(2) In discharging functions under this Part, the Secretary of State must have regard to the regulatory objectives.

391C Meaning of "regulatory functions" and "regulatory objectives"

(1) This section has effect for the purposes of this Part.

(2) "Regulatory functions", in relation to a recognised professional body, means any functions the body has—
  (a) under or in relation to its arrangements for or in connection with—
    (i) authorising persons to act as insolvency practitioners, or
    (ii) regulating persons acting as insolvency practitioners, or
  (b) in connection with the making or alteration of those arrangements.

(3) "Regulatory objectives" means the objectives of—
  (a) having a system of regulating persons acting as insolvency practitioners that—
    (i) secures fair treatment for persons affected by their acts and omissions,
    (ii) reflects the regulatory principles, and
    (iii) ensures consistent outcomes,
  (b) encouraging an independent and competitive insolvency-practitioner profession whose members—
    (i) provide high quality services at a cost to the recipient which is fair and reasonable,
    (ii) act transparently and with integrity, and
    (iii) consider the interests of all creditors in any particular case,
  (c) promoting the maximisation of the value of returns to creditors and promptness in making those returns, and
  (d) protecting and promoting the public interest.

(4) In subsection (3)(a), "regulatory principles" means—
  (a) the principles that regulatory activities should be transparent, accountable, proportionate, consistent and targeted only at cases in which action is needed, and
  (b) any other principle appearing to the body concerned (in the case of the duty under section 391B(1)), or to the Secretary of State (in the case of the duty under section 391B(2)), to lead to best regulatory practice."

(2) In section 419 of the Insolvency Act 1986 (regulations for the purposes of Part 13), at the end insert—

"(5) In making regulations under this section, the Secretary of State must have regard to the regulatory objectives (as defined by section 391C(3))."

139 Oversight of recognised professional bodies

(1) After section 391C of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 138) insert—

"Oversight of recognised professional bodies

391D Directions

(1) This section applies if the Secretary of State is satisfied that an act or omission of a recognised professional body (or a series of such acts or omissions) in discharging one or more of its regulatory functions has had, or is likely to have, an adverse impact on the achievement of one or more of the regulatory objectives.

(2) The Secretary of State may, if in all the circumstances of the case satisfied that it is appropriate to do so, direct the body to take such steps as the Secretary of State considers will counter the adverse impact, mitigate its effect or prevent its occurrence or recurrence.

(3) A direction under this section may require a recognised professional body—
  (a) to take only such steps as it has power to take under its regulatory arrangements;
  (b) to take steps with a view to the modification of any part of its regulatory arrangements.

(4) A direction under this section may require a recognised professional body—
  (a) to take steps with a view to the institution of, or otherwise in respect of, specific regulatory proceedings;
  (b) to take steps in respect of all, or a specified class of, such proceedings.

(5) For the purposes of this section, a direction to take steps includes a direction which requires a recognised professional body to refrain from taking a particular course of action.

(6) In this section "regulatory arrangements", in relation to a recognised professional body, means the arrangements that the body has for or in connection with—
  (a) authorising persons to act as insolvency practitioners, or
  (b) regulating persons acting as insolvency practitioners.

391E Directions: procedure

(1) Before giving a recognised professional body a direction under section 391D, the Secretary of State must give the body a notice accompanied by a draft of the proposed direction.

(2) The notice under subsection (1) must—
  (a) state that the Secretary of State proposes to give the body a direction in the form of the accompanying draft,
  (b) specify why the Secretary of State has reached the conclusions mentioned in section 391D(1) and (2), and
  (c) specify a period within which the body may make written representations with respect to the proposal.

(3) The period specified under subsection (2)(c)—

(a) must begin with the date on which the notice is given to the body, and
(b) must not be less than 28 days.

(4) On the expiry of that period, the Secretary of State must decide whether to give the body the proposed direction.

(5) The Secretary of State must give notice of that decision to the body.

(6) Where the Secretary of State decides to give the proposed direction, the notice under subsection (5) must—
(a) contain the direction,
(b) state the time at which the direction is to take effect, and
(c) specify the Secretary of State's reasons for the decision to give the direction.

(7) Where the Secretary of State decides to give the proposed direction, the Secretary of State must publish the notice under subsection (5); but this subsection does not apply to a direction to take any step with a view to the institution of, or otherwise in respect of, regulatory proceedings against an individual.

(8) The Secretary of State may revoke a direction under section 391D; and, where doing so, the Secretary of State—
(a) must give the body to which the direction was given notice of the revocation, and
(b) must publish the notice and, if the notice under subsection (5) was published under subsection (7), must do so (if possible) in the same manner as that in which that notice was published.

391F Financial penalty

(1) This section applies if the Secretary of State is satisfied—
(a) that a recognised professional body has failed to comply with a requirement to which this section applies, and
(b) that, in all the circumstances of the case, it is appropriate to impose a financial penalty on the body.

(2) This section applies to a requirement imposed on the recognised professional body—
(a) by a direction given under section 391D, or
(b) by a provision of this Act or of subordinate legislation under this Act.

(3) The Secretary of State may impose a financial penalty, in respect of the failure, of such amount as the Secretary of State considers appropriate.

(4) In deciding what amount is appropriate, the Secretary of State—
(a) must have regard to the nature of the requirement which has not been complied with, and
(b) must not take into account the Secretary of State's costs in discharging functions under this Part.

(5) A financial penalty under this section is payable to the Secretary of State; and sums received by the Secretary of State in respect of a financial penalty under this section (including by way of interest) are to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

(6) In sections 391G to 391I, "penalty" means a financial penalty under this section.

391G Financial penalty: procedure

(1) Before imposing a penalty on a recognised professional body, the Secretary of State must give notice to the body—
  (a) stating that the Secretary of State proposes to impose a penalty and the amount of the proposed penalty,
  (b) specifying the requirement in question,
  (c) stating why the Secretary of State is satisfied as mentioned in section 391F(1), and
  (d) specifying a period within which the body may make written representations with respect to the proposal.

(2) The period specified under subsection (1)(d)—
  (a) must begin with the date on which the notice is given to the body, and
  (b) must not be less than 28 days.

(3) On the expiry of that period, the Secretary of State must decide—
  (a) whether to impose a penalty, and
  (b) whether the penalty should be the amount stated in the notice or a reduced amount.

(4) The Secretary of State must give notice of the decision to the body.

(5) Where the Secretary of State decides to impose a penalty, the notice under subsection (4) must—
  (a) state that the Secretary of State has imposed a penalty on the body and its amount,
  (b) specify the requirement in question and state—
    (i) why it appears to the Secretary of State that the requirement has not been complied with, or
    (ii) where, by that time, the requirement has been complied with, why it appeared to the Secretary of State when giving the notice under subsection (1) that the requirement had not been complied with, and
  (c) specify a time by which the penalty is required to be paid.

(6) The time specified under subsection (5)(c) must be at least three months after the date on which the notice under subsection (4) is given to the body.

(7) Where the Secretary of State decides to impose a penalty, the Secretary of State must publish the notice under subsection (4).

(8) The Secretary of State may rescind or reduce a penalty imposed on a recognised professional body; and, where doing so, the Secretary of State—
  (a) must give the body notice that the penalty has been rescinded or reduced to the amount stated in the notice, and
  (b) must publish the notice; and it must (if possible) be published in the same manner as that in which the notice under subsection (4) was published.

391H Appeal against financial penalty

(1) A recognised professional body on which a penalty is imposed may appeal to the court on one or more of the appeal grounds.

(2) The appeal grounds are—
  (a) that the imposition of the penalty was not within the Secretary of State's power under section 391F;
  (b) that the requirement in respect of which the penalty was imposed had been complied with before the notice under section 391G(1) was given;
  (c) that the requirements of section 391G have not been complied with in relation to the imposition of the penalty and the interests of the body have been substantially prejudiced as a result;
  (d) that the amount of the penalty is unreasonable;
  (e) that it was unreasonable of the Secretary of State to require the penalty imposed to be paid by the time specified in the notice under section 391G(5)(c).

(3) An appeal under this section must be made within the period of three months beginning with the day on which the notice under section 391G(4) in respect of the penalty is given to the body.

(4) On an appeal under this section the court may—
  (a) quash the penalty,
  (b) substitute a penalty of such lesser amount as the court considers appropriate, or
  (c) in the case of the appeal ground in subsection (2)(e), substitute for the time imposed by the Secretary of State a different time.

(5) Where the court substitutes a penalty of a lesser amount, it may require the payment of interest on the substituted penalty from such time, and at such rate, as it considers just and equitable.

(6) Where the court substitutes a later time for the time specified in the notice under section 391G(5)(c), it may require the payment of interest on the penalty from the substituted time at such rate as it considers just and equitable.

(7) Where the court dismisses the appeal, it may require the payment of interest on the penalty from the time specified in the notice under section 391G(5)(c) at such rate as it considers just and equitable.

(8) In this section, "the court" means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session.

391I Recovery of financial penalties

(1) If the whole or part of a penalty is not paid by the time by which it is required to be paid, the unpaid balance from time to time carries interest at the rate for the time being specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838 (but this is subject to any requirement imposed by the court under section 391H(5), (6) or (7)).

(2) If an appeal is made under section 391H in relation to a penalty, the penalty is not required to be paid until the appeal has been determined or withdrawn.

(3) Subsection (4) applies where the whole or part of a penalty has not been paid by the time it is required to be paid and—

(a) no appeal relating to the penalty has been made under section 391H during the period within which an appeal may be made under that section, or

(b) an appeal has been made under that section and determined or withdrawn.

(4) The Secretary of State may recover from the recognised professional body in question, as a debt due to the Secretary of State, any of the penalty and any interest which has not been paid.

391J Reprimand

(1) This section applies if the Secretary of State is satisfied that an act or omission of a recognised professional body (or a series of such acts or omissions) in discharging one or more of its regulatory functions has had, or is likely to have, an adverse impact on the achievement of one or more of the regulatory objectives.

(2) The Secretary of State may, if in all the circumstances of the case satisfied that it is appropriate to do so, publish a statement reprimanding the body for the act or omission (or series of acts or omissions).

391K Reprimand: procedure

(1) If the Secretary of State proposes to publish a statement under section 391J in respect of a recognised professional body, it must give the body a notice—

(a) stating that the Secretary of State proposes to publish such a statement and setting out the terms of the proposed statement,

(b) specifying the acts or omissions to which the proposed statement relates, and

(c) specifying a period within which the body may make written representations with respect to the proposal.

(2) The period specified under subsection (1)(c)—

(a) must begin with the date on which the notice is given to the body, and

(b) must not be less than 28 days.

(3) On the expiry of that period, the Secretary of State must decide whether to publish the statement.

(4) The Secretary of State may vary the proposed statement; but before doing so, the Secretary of State must give the body notice—

(a) setting out the proposed variation and the reasons for it, and

(b) specifying a period within which the body may make written representations with respect to the proposed variation.

(5) The period specified under subsection (4)(b)—

(a) must begin with the date on which the notice is given to the body, and

(b) must not be less than 28 days.

(6) On the expiry of that period, the Secretary of State must decide whether to publish the statement as varied."

(2) In section 415A of the Insolvency Act 1986 (fees orders: general), after subsection (1A) (inserted by section 17 of the Deregulation Act 2015) insert—

"(1B) In setting under subsection (1) the amount of a fee in connection with maintenance of recognition, the matters to which the Secretary of State may have regard include, in particular, the costs of the Secretary of State in connection with any functions under sections 391D, 391E, 391J, 391K and 391N."

140 Recognised professional bodies: revocation of recognition

(1) After section 391K of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 139) insert—

"Revocation etc of recognition

391L Revocation of recognition at instigation of Secretary of State

(1) An order under section 391(1) or (2) in relation to a recognised professional body may be revoked by the Secretary of State by order if the Secretary of State is satisfied that—
  (a) an act or omission of the body (or a series of such acts or omissions) in discharging one or more of its regulatory functions has had, or is likely to have, an adverse impact on the achievement of one or more of the regulatory objectives, and
  (b) it is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case to revoke the body's recognition under section 391.

(2) If the condition set out in subsection (3) is met, an order under section 391(1) in relation to a recognised professional body may be revoked by the Secretary of State by an order which also declares the body concerned to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with partial authorisation only of the kind specified in the order (see section 390A(1)).

(3) The condition is that the Secretary of State is satisfied—
  (a) as mentioned in subsection (1)(a), and
  (b) that it is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case for the body to be declared to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with partial authorisation only of the kind specified in the order.

(4) In this Part—
  (a) an order under subsection (1) is referred to as a "revocation order";
  (b) an order under subsection (2) is referred to as a "partial revocation order".

(5) A revocation order or partial revocation order—
  (a) has effect from such date as is specified in the order, and
  (b) may make provision for members of the body in question to continue to be treated as fully or partially authorised (as the case may be) to act as insolvency practitioners for a specified period after the order takes effect.

(6) A partial revocation order has effect as if it were an order made under section 391(2).

391M Orders under section 391L: procedure

(1) Before making a revocation order or partial revocation order in relation to a recognised professional body, the Secretary of State must give notice to the body—
  (a) stating that the Secretary of State proposes to make the order and the terms of the proposed order,
  (b) specifying the Secretary of State's reasons for proposing to make the order, and
  (c) specifying a period within which the body, members of the body or other persons likely to be affected by the proposal may make written representations with respect to it.

(2) Where the Secretary of State gives a notice under subsection (1), the Secretary of State must publish the notice on the same day.

(3) The period specified under subsection (1)(c)—
  (a) must begin with the date on which the notice is given to the body, and
  (b) must not be less than 28 days.

(4) On the expiry of that period, the Secretary of State must decide whether to make the revocation order or (as the case may be) partial revocation order in relation to the body.

(5) The Secretary of State must give notice of the decision to the body.

(6) Where the Secretary of State decides to make the order, the notice under subsection (5) must specify—
  (a) when the order is to take effect, and
  (b) the Secretary of State's reasons for making the order.

(7) A notice under subsection (5) must be published; and it must (if possible) be published in the same manner as that in which the notice under subsection (1) was published.

391N Revocation of recognition at request of body

(1) An order under section 391(1) or (2) in relation to a recognised professional body may be revoked by the Secretary of State by order if—
  (a) the body has requested that an order be made under this subsection, and
  (b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case to revoke the body's recognition under section 391.

(2) An order under section 391(1) in relation to a recognised professional body may be revoked by the Secretary of State by an order which also declares the body concerned to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with partial authorisation only of the kind specified in the order (see section 390A(1)) if—

(a) the body has requested that an order be made under this subsection, and

(b) the Secretary of State is satisfied that it is appropriate in all the circumstances of the case for the body to be declared to be a recognised professional body which is capable of providing its insolvency specialist members with partial authorisation only of the kind specified in the order.

(3) Where the Secretary of State decides to make an order under this section the Secretary of State must publish a notice specifying—

(a) when the order is to take effect, and

(b) the Secretary of State's reasons for making the order.

(4) An order under this section—

(a) has effect from such date as is specified in the order, and

(b) may make provision for members of the body in question to continue to be treated as fully or partially authorised (as the case may be) to act as insolvency practitioners for a specified period after the order takes effect.

(5) An order under subsection (2) has effect as if it were an order made under section 391(2)."

(2) In section 415A of the Insolvency Act 1986 (fees orders: general), after subsection (4) insert—

"(5) Section 391M applies for the purposes of an order under subsection (1)(b) as it applies for the purposes of a revocation order made under section 391L."

141 Court sanction of insolvency practitioners in public interest cases

After section 391N of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 140) insert—

"Court sanction of insolvency practitioners in public interest cases

391O Direct sanctions orders

(1) For the purposes of this Part a "direct sanctions order" is an order made by the court against a person who is acting as an insolvency practitioner which—

(a) declares that the person is no longer authorised (whether fully or partially) to act as an insolvency practitioner;

(b) declares that the person is no longer fully authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner but remains partially authorised to act as such either in relation to companies or individuals, as specified in the order;

(c) declares that the person's authorisation to act as an insolvency practitioner is suspended for the period specified in the order or until such time as the requirements so specified are complied with;

(d) requires the person to comply with such other requirements as may be specified in the order while acting as an insolvency practitioner;

(e) requires the person to make such contribution as may be specified in the order to one or more creditors of a company,

individual or insolvent partnership in relation to which the person is acting or has acted as an insolvency practitioner.

(2) Where the court makes a direct sanctions order, the relevant recognised professional body must take all necessary steps to give effect to the order.

(3) A direct sanctions order must not be made against a person whose authorisation to act as an insolvency practitioner was granted by the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment in Northern Ireland (see section 390A(2)(b)).

(4) A direct sanctions order must not specify a contribution as mentioned in subsection (1)(e) which is more than the remuneration that the person has received or will receive in respect of acting as an insolvency practitioner in the case.

(5) In this section and section 391P—

"the court" means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session;

"relevant recognised professional body", in relation to a person who is acting as an insolvency practitioner, means the recognised professional body by virtue of which the person is authorised so to act.

391P Application for, and power to make, direct sanctions order

(1) The Secretary of State may apply to the court for a direct sanctions order to be made against a person if it appears to the Secretary of State that it would be in the public interest for the order to be made.

(2) The Secretary of State must send a copy of the application to the relevant recognised professional body.

(3) The court may make a direct sanctions order against a person where, on an application under this section, the court is satisfied that condition 1 and at least one of conditions 2, 3, 4 and 5 are met in relation to the person.

(4) The conditions are set out in section 391Q.

(5) In deciding whether to make a direct sanctions order against a person the court must have regard to the extent to which—

(a) the relevant recognised professional body has taken action against the person in respect of the failure mentioned in condition 1, and

(b) that action is sufficient to address the failure.

391Q Direct sanctions order: conditions

(1) Condition 1 is that the person, in acting as an insolvency practitioner or in connection with any appointment as such, has failed to comply with—

(a) a requirement imposed by the rules of the relevant recognised professional body;

(b) any standards, or code of ethics, for the insolvency-practitioner profession adopted from time to time by the relevant recognised professional body.

(2) Condition 2 is that the person—
  (a) is not a fit and proper person to act as an insolvency practitioner;
  (b) is a fit and proper person to act as an insolvency practitioner only in relation to companies, but the person's authorisation is not so limited; or
  (c) is a fit and proper person to act as an insolvency practitioner only in relation to individuals, but the person's authorisation is not so limited.

(3) Condition 3 is that it is appropriate for the person's authorisation to act as an insolvency practitioner to be suspended for a period or until one or more requirements are complied with.

(4) Condition 4 is that it is appropriate to impose other restrictions on the person acting as an insolvency practitioner.

(5) Condition 5 is that loss has been suffered as a result of the failure mentioned in condition 1 by one or more creditors of a company, individual or insolvent partnership in relation to which the person is acting or has acted as an insolvency practitioner.

(6) In this section "relevant recognised professional body" has the same meaning as in section 391O.

391R Direct sanctions direction instead of order

(1) The Secretary of State may give a direction (a "direct sanctions direction") in relation to a person acting as an insolvency practitioner to the relevant recognised professional body (instead of applying, or continuing with an application, for a direct sanctions order against the person) if the Secretary of State is satisfied that—
  (a) condition 1 and at least one of conditions 2, 3, 4 and 5 are met in relation to the person (see section 391Q), and
  (b) it is in the public interest for the direction to be given.

(2) But the Secretary of State may not give a direct sanctions direction in relation to a person without that person's consent.

(3) A direct sanctions direction may require the relevant recognised professional body to take all necessary steps to secure that—
  (a) the person is no longer authorised (whether fully or partially) to act as an insolvency practitioner;
  (b) the person is no longer fully authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner but remains partially authorised to act as such either in relation to companies or individuals, as specified in the direction;
  (c) the person's authorisation to act as an insolvency practitioner is suspended for the period specified in the direction or until such time as the requirements so specified are complied with;
  (d) the person must comply with such other requirements as may be specified in the direction while acting as an insolvency practitioner;
  (e) the person makes such contribution as may be specified in the direction to one or more creditors of a company, individual or

insolvent partnership in relation to which the person is acting or has acted as an insolvency practitioner.

(4) A direct sanctions direction must not be given in relation to a person whose authorisation to act as an insolvency practitioner was granted by the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment in Northern Ireland (see section 390A(2)(b)).

(5) A direct sanctions direction must not specify a contribution as mentioned in subsection (3)(e) which is more than the remuneration that the person has received or will receive in respect of acting as an insolvency practitioner in the case.

(6) In this section "relevant recognised professional body" has the same meaning as in section 391O."

142 Power for Secretary of State to obtain information

After section 391R of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 141) insert—

"General

391S Power for Secretary of State to obtain information

(1) A person mentioned in subsection (2) must give the Secretary of State such information as the Secretary of State may by notice in writing require for the exercise of the Secretary of State's functions under this Part.

(2) Those persons are—
  (a) a recognised professional body;
  (b) any individual who is or has been authorised under section 390A to act as an insolvency practitioner;
  (c) any person who is connected to such an individual.

(3) A person is connected to an individual who is or has been authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner if, at any time during the authorisation—
  (a) the person was an employee of the individual;
  (b) the person acted on behalf of the individual in any other way;
  (c) the person employed the individual;
  (d) the person was a fellow employee of the individual's employer;
  (e) in a case where the individual was employed by a firm, partnership or company, the person was a member of the firm or partnership or (as the case may be) a director of the company.

(4) In imposing a requirement under subsection (1) the Secretary of State may specify—
  (a) the time period within which the information in question is to be given, and
  (b) the manner in which it is to be verified."

143 Compliance orders

After section 391S of the Insolvency Act 1986 (inserted by section 142) insert—

"391T Compliance orders

(1) If at any time it appears to the Secretary of State that—
  (a) a recognised professional body has failed to comply with a requirement imposed on it by or by virtue of this Part, or
  (b) any other person has failed to comply with a requirement imposed on the person by virtue of section 391S,

the Secretary of State may make an application to the court.

(2) If, on an application under this section, the court decides that the body or other person has failed to comply with the requirement in question, it may order the body or person to take such steps as the court considers will secure that the requirement is complied with.

(3) In this section, "the court" means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session."

Power to establish single regulator of insolvency practitioners

144 Power to establish single regulator of insolvency practitioners

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations designate a body for the purposes of—
  (a) authorising persons to act as insolvency practitioners, and
  (b) regulating persons acting as such.

(2) The designated body may be either—
  (a) a body corporate established by the regulations, or
  (b) a body (whether a body corporate or an unincorporated association) already in existence when the regulations are made (an "existing body").

(3) The regulations may, in particular, confer the following functions on the designated body—
  (a) establishing criteria for determining whether a person is a fit and proper person to act as an insolvency practitioner;
  (b) establishing the requirements as to education, practical training and experience which a person must meet in order to act as an insolvency practitioner;
  (c) establishing and maintaining a system for providing full authorisation or partial authorisation to persons who meet those criteria and requirements;
  (d) imposing technical standards for persons so authorised and enforcing compliance with those standards;
  (e) imposing professional and ethical standards for persons so authorised and enforcing compliance with those standards;
  (f) monitoring the performance and conduct of persons so authorised;
  (g) investigating complaints made against, and other matters concerning the performance or conduct of, persons so authorised.

(4) The regulations may require the designated body, in discharging regulatory functions, so far as is reasonably practicable, to act in a way—
  (a) which is compatible with the regulatory objectives, and
  (b) which the body considers most appropriate for the purpose of meeting those objectives.

(5) Provision made under subsection (3)(d) or (3)(e) for the enforcement of the standards concerned may include provision enabling the designated body to impose a financial penalty on a person who is or has been authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner.

(6) The regulations may, in particular, include provision for the purpose of treating a person authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner by virtue of being a member of a professional body recognised under section 391 of the Insolvency Act 1986 immediately before the regulations come into force as authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner by the body designated by the regulations after that time.

(7) Expressions used in this section which are defined for the purposes of Part 13 of the Insolvency Act 1986 have the same meaning in this section as in that Part.

(8) Section 145 makes further provision about regulations under this section which designate an existing body.

(9) Schedule 11 makes supplementary provision in relation to the designation of a body by regulations under this section.

145 Regulations under section 144: designation of existing body

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations under section 144 designating an existing body only if it appears to the Secretary of State that—
  (a) the body is able and willing to exercise the functions that would be conferred by the regulations, and
  (b) the body has arrangements in place relating to the exercise of those functions which are such as to be likely to ensure that the conditions in subsection (2) are met.

(2) The conditions are—
  (a) that the functions in question will be exercised effectively, and
  (b) where the regulations are to contain any requirements or other provisions prescribed under subsection (3), that those functions will be exercised in accordance with any such requirements or provisions.

(3) Regulations which designate an existing body may contain such requirements or other provisions relating to the exercise of the functions by the designated body as appear to the Secretary of State to be appropriate.

146 Regulations under section 144: timing and supplementary

(1) Section 144 and, accordingly, section 145 and subsections (3) and (4) below expire at the end of the relevant period unless the power conferred by subsection (1) of section 144 is exercised before the end of that period.

(2) The "relevant period" is the period of 7 years beginning with the day on which section 144 comes into force.

(3) Regulations under section 144 are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(4) If a draft of a statutory instrument containing regulations under section 144 would, apart from this subsection, be treated for the purposes of the Standing Orders of either House of Parliament as a hybrid instrument, it is to proceed in that House as if it were not a hybrid instrument.

PART 11

EMPLOYMENT

Equal pay

147 Equal pay: transparency

(1) The Secretary of State must, as soon as possible and no later than 12 months after the passing of this Act, make regulations under section 78 of the Equality Act 2010 (gender pay gap information) for the purpose of requiring the publication of information showing whether there are differences in the pay of males and females.

(2) The Secretary of State must consult such persons as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate on the details of such regulations prior to publication.

Whistleblowing

148 Protected disclosures: reporting requirements

(1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.

(2) In Part 4A (protected disclosures), after section 43F insert—

"43FA Prescribed persons: duty to report on disclosures of information

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations requiring a person prescribed for the purposes of section 43F to produce an annual report on disclosures of information made to the person by workers.

(2) The regulations must set out the matters that are to be covered in a report, but must not require a report to provide detail that would enable either of the following to be identified—
  (a) a worker who has made a disclosure;
  (b) an employer or other person in respect of whom a disclosure has been made.

(3) The regulations must make provision about the publication of a report, and such provision may include (but is not limited to) any of the following requirements—
  (a) to send the report to the Secretary of State for laying before Parliament;
  (b) to include the report in another report or in information required to be published by the prescribed person;
  (c) to publish the report on a website.

(4) The regulations may make provision about the time period within which a report must be produced and published.

(5) Regulations under subsections (2) to (4) may make different provision for different prescribed persons."

(3) In section 236 (orders and regulations)—

(a) in subsection (3), before "43K(4)" insert "43FA (but see subsection (3A)),";

(b) after subsection (3) insert—

"(3A) Subsection (3) does not apply to regulations under section 43FA that contain only the provision mentioned in section 43FA(2), (3) or (4)."

149 Protection for applicants for employment etc in the health service

(1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 49A insert—

"PART 5A

PROTECTION FOR APPLICANTS FOR EMPLOYMENT ETC IN THE HEALTH SERVICE

49B Regulations prohibiting discrimination because of protected disclosure

(1) The Secretary of State may make regulations prohibiting an NHS employer from discriminating against an applicant because it appears to the NHS employer that the applicant has made a protected disclosure.

(2) An "applicant", in relation to an NHS employer, means an individual who applies to the NHS employer for—

(a) a contract of employment,

(b) a contract to do work personally, or

(c) appointment to an office or post.

(3) For the purposes of subsection (1), an NHS employer discriminates against an applicant if the NHS employer refuses the applicant's application or in some other way treats the applicant less favourably than it treats or would treat other applicants in relation to the same contract, office or post.

(4) Regulations under this section may, in particular—

(a) make provision as to circumstances in which discrimination by a worker or agent of an NHS employer is to be treated, for the purposes of the regulations, as discrimination by the NHS employer;

(b) confer jurisdiction (including exclusive jurisdiction) on employment tribunals or the Employment Appeal Tribunal;

(c) make provision for or about the grant or enforcement of specified remedies by a court or tribunal;

(d) make provision for the making of awards of compensation calculated in accordance with the regulations;

(e) make different provision for different cases or circumstances;

(f) make incidental or consequential provision, including incidental or consequential provision amending—
  (i) an Act of Parliament (including this Act),
  (ii) an Act of the Scottish Parliament,
  (iii) a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales, or
  (iv) an instrument made under an Act or Measure within any of sub-paragraphs (i) to (iii).

(5) Subsection (4)(f) does not affect the application of section 236(5) to the power conferred by this section.

(6) "NHS employer" means an NHS public body prescribed by regulations under this section.

(7) "NHS public body" means—
  (a) the National Health Service Commissioning Board;
  (b) a clinical commissioning group;
  (c) a Special Health Authority;
  (d) an NHS trust;
  (e) an NHS foundation trust;
  (f) the Care Quality Commission;
  (g) Health Education England;
  (h) the Health Research Authority;
  (i) the Health and Social Care Information Centre;
  (j) the National Institute for Health and Care Excellence;
  (k) Monitor;
  (l) a Local Health Board established under section 11 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
  (m) the Common Services Agency for the Scottish Health Service;
  (n) Healthcare Improvement Scotland;
  (o) a Health Board constituted under section 2 of the National Health Service (Scotland) Act 1978;
  (p) a Special Health Board constituted under that section.

(8) The Secretary of State must consult the Welsh Ministers before making regulations prescribing any of the following NHS public bodies for the purposes of the definition of "NHS employer"—
  (a) a Special Health Authority established under section 22 of the National Health Service (Wales) Act 2006;
  (b) an NHS trust established under section 18 of that Act;
  (c) a Local Health Board established under section 11 of that Act.

(9) The Secretary of State must consult the Scottish Ministers before making regulations prescribing an NHS public body within any of paragraphs (m) to (p) of subsection (7) for the purposes of the definition of "NHS employer".

(10) For the purposes of subsection (4)(a)—
  (a) "worker" has the extended meaning given by section 43K, and
  (b) a person is a worker of an NHS employer if the NHS employer is an employer in relation to the person within the extended meaning given by that section."

(3) In section 230(6) (interpretation of references to employees, workers etc) for "and 47B(3)" substitute ", 47B(3) and 49B(10)".

(4) In section 236(3) (orders and regulations subject to affirmative procedure) after "47C," insert "49B,".

Employment tribunals

150 Financial penalty for failure to pay sums ordered by employment tribunal etc

(1) The Employment Tribunals Act 1996 is amended as provided in subsections (2) to (6).

(2) After section 37 insert—

"PART 2A

FINANCIAL PENALTIES FOR FAILURE TO PAY SUMS ORDERED TO BE PAID OR SETTLEMENT SUMS

37A Sums to which financial penalty can relate

(1) This section has effect for the purposes of this Part.

(2) "Financial award"—
  (a) means a sum of money (or, if more than one, the sums of money) ordered by an employment tribunal on a claim involving an employer and a worker, or on a relevant appeal, to be paid by the employer to the worker, and
  (b) includes—
    (i) any sum (a "costs sum") required to be paid in accordance with an order in respect of costs or expenses which relate to proceedings on, or preparation time relating to, the claim or a relevant appeal, and
    (ii) in a case to which section 16 applies, a sum ordered to be paid to the Secretary of State under that section.

(3) Subsection (2)(b)(i) applies irrespective of when the order was made or the amount of the costs sum was determined.

(4) "Settlement sum" means a sum payable by an employer to a worker under the terms of a settlement in respect of which a certificate has been issued under section 19A(1).

(5) "Relevant sum" means—
  (a) a financial award, or
  (b) a settlement sum.

(6) "Relevant appeal", in relation to a financial award, means an appeal against—
  (a) the decision on the claim to which it relates,
  (b) a decision to make, or not to make, an order in respect of a financial award (including any costs sum) on the claim,
  (c) the amount of any such award, or

(d) any decision made on an appeal within paragraphs (a) to (c) or this paragraph.

(7) Sections 37B to 37D apply for the purposes of calculating the unpaid amount on any day of a relevant sum.

37B Financial award: unpaid amount

(1) In the case of a financial award, the unpaid amount on any day means the amount outstanding immediately before that day in respect of—
  (a) the initial amount of the financial award (see subsection (2)), and
  (b) interest payable in respect of the financial award by virtue of section 14.

(2) The initial amount of a financial award is—
  (a) in a case to which section 16 applies, the monetary award within the meaning of that section (see section 17(3)), together with any costs sum, and
  (b) in any other case, the sum or sums of money ordered to be paid (including any costs sum).

(3) An amount in respect of a financial award is not to be regarded as outstanding—
  (a) when the worker could make an application for an order for a costs sum in relation to—
    (i) proceedings on the claim to which the financial award relates,
    (ii) proceedings on a relevant appeal,
  (b) when the worker has made such an application but the application has not been withdrawn or finally determined,
  (c) when the employer or worker could appeal against—
    (i) the decision on the claim to which it relates,
    (ii) a decision to make, or not to make, a financial award (including any costs sum) on the claim,
    (iii) the amount of any such award, or
    (iv) any decision made on an appeal within sub-paragraphs (i) to (iii) or this sub-paragraph,

  but has not done so, or
  (d) when the employer or worker has made such an appeal but the appeal has not been withdrawn or finally determined.

37C Settlement sum: unpaid amount

(1) In the case of a settlement sum, the unpaid amount on any day means the amount outstanding immediately before that day in respect of—
  (a) the settlement sum, and
  (b) interest (if any) calculated in accordance with the settlement (within the meaning of section 19A).

(2) Subject to section 37D(2) and (3), an amount in respect of a settlement sum is not to be regarded as outstanding if the settlement sum is not recoverable under section 19A(3).

37D Unpaid amount of relevant sum: further provision

(1) Subsections (2) and (3) apply where—
  (a) a relevant sum is to be paid by instalments,
  (b) any instalment is not paid on or before the day on which it is due to be paid, and
  (c) a warning notice (see section 37E) is given in consequence of the failure to pay that instalment ("the unpaid instalment").

(2) For the purposes of calculating the unpaid amount for—
  (a) that warning notice, and
  (b) any penalty notice given in respect of that warning notice,
  any remaining instalments (whether or not yet due) are to be treated as having been due on the same day as the unpaid instalment.

(3) Accordingly, the amount outstanding in respect of the financial award or settlement sum is to be taken to be—
  (a) the aggregate of—
    (i) the unpaid instalment, and
    (ii) any remaining instalments,
    including, in the case of a settlement sum, any amount which is not recoverable under section 19A(3) by reason only of not being due,
  (b) interest on those amounts calculated in accordance with section 37B(1)(b) or 37C(1)(b) (and subsection (2)).

(4) Subsections (2) and (3) are not to be taken to affect the time at which any remaining instalment is due to be paid by the employer.

(5) The provisions of this Part apply where a financial award consists of two or more sums (whether or not any of them is a costs sum) which are required to be paid at different times as if—
  (a) it were a relevant sum to be paid by instalments, and
  (b) those sums were the instalments.

(6) Where a payment by an employer is made, or purported to be made, in respect of a relevant sum, an enforcement officer may determine whether, and to what extent, the payment is to be treated as being—
  (a) in respect of that relevant sum or instead in respect of some other amount owed by the employer;
  (b) in respect of the initial amount or interest on it, in the case of a payment treated as being in respect of the relevant sum.

37E Warning notice

(1) This section applies where an enforcement officer considers that an employer who is required to pay a relevant sum has failed—
  (a) in the case of a relevant sum which is to be paid by instalments, to pay an instalment on or before the day on which it is due to be paid, or
  (b) in any other case, to pay the relevant sum in full on or before the day on which it is due to be paid.

(2) The officer may give the employer a notice (a "warning notice") stating the officer's intention to impose a financial penalty in respect of the

relevant sum unless before a date specified in the warning notice ("the specified date") the employer has paid in full the amount so specified ("the specified amount").

This is subject to subsection (3).

(3) Where a penalty notice has previously been given in respect of the relevant sum, the officer may not give a warning notice until—

(a) 3 months have elapsed since the end of the relevant period (within the meaning of section 37H) relating to the last penalty notice given in respect of the relevant sum, and

(b) if the relevant sum is to be paid by instalments, the last instalment has become due for payment.

(4) The specified date must be after the end of the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the warning notice is given.

(5) The specified amount must be the unpaid amount of the relevant sum on the day on which the warning notice is given.

(6) A warning notice must identify the relevant sum and state—

(a) how the specified amount has been calculated;

(b) the grounds on which it is proposed to impose a penalty;

(c) the amount of the financial penalty that would be imposed if no payment were made in respect of the relevant sum before the specified date;

(d) that the employer may before the specified date make representations about the proposal to impose a penalty, including representations—

(i) about payments which the employer makes in respect of the relevant sum after the warning notice is given;

(ii) about the employer's ability to pay both a financial penalty and the relevant sum;

(e) how any such representations may be made.

(7) The statement under subsection (6)(e) must include provision for allowing representations to be made by post (whether or not it also allows them to be made in any other way).

(8) If the employer pays the specified amount before the specified date, the relevant sum is to be treated for the purposes of this Part as having been paid in full.

(9) Subsection (8) is not to be taken to affect the liability of the employer to pay any increase in the unpaid amount between the date of the warning notice and the date of payment.

37F Penalty notice

(1) This section applies where an enforcement officer—

(a) has given a warning notice to an employer, and

(b) is satisfied that the employer has failed to pay the specified amount in full before the specified date.

(2) The officer may give the employer a notice (a "penalty notice") requiring the employer to pay a financial penalty to the Secretary of State.

(3) A penalty notice must identify the relevant sum and state—
  (a) the grounds on which the penalty notice is given;
  (b) the unpaid amount of the relevant sum on the specified date and how it has been calculated;
  (c) the amount of the financial penalty (see subsections (4) to (6));
  (d) how the penalty must be paid;
  (e) the period within which the penalty must be paid;
  (f) how the employer may pay a reduced penalty instead of the financial penalty;
  (g) the amount of the reduced penalty (see subsection (8));
  (h) how the employer may appeal against the penalty notice;
  (i) the consequences of non-payment.

(4) Subject to subsections (5) and (6), the amount of the financial penalty is 50% of the unpaid amount of the relevant sum on the specified date.

(5) If the unpaid amount on the specified date is less than £200, the amount of the penalty is £100.

(6) If the unpaid amount on the specified date is more than £10,000, the amount of the financial penalty is £5,000.

(7) The period specified under subsection (3)(e) must be a period of not less than 28 days beginning with the day on which the penalty notice is given.

(8) The amount of the reduced penalty is 50% of the amount of the financial penalty.

(9) Subsection (10) applies if, within the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which the penalty notice is given, the employer—
  (a) pays the unpaid amount of the relevant sum on the specified date (as stated in the notice under subsection (3)(b)), and
  (b) pays the reduced penalty to the Secretary of State.

(10) The employer is to be treated—
  (a) for the purposes of this Part, as having paid the relevant sum in full, and
  (b) by paying the reduced penalty, as having paid the whole of the financial penalty.

(11) Subsection (10)(a) is not to be taken to affect the liability of the employer to pay any increase in the unpaid amount of the relevant sum between the specified date and the date of payment.

37G Appeal against penalty notice

(1) An employer to whom a penalty notice is given may, before the end of the period specified under section 37F(3)(e) (period within which penalty must be paid), appeal against—
  (a) the penalty notice; or
  (b) the amount of the financial penalty.

(2) An appeal under subsection (1) lies to an employment tribunal.

(3) An appeal under subsection (1) may be made on one or more of the following grounds—

(a) that the grounds stated in the penalty notice under section 37F(3)(a) were incorrect;
(b) that it was unreasonable for the enforcement officer to have given the notice;
(c) that the calculation of an amount stated in the penalty notice was incorrect.

(4) On an appeal under subsection (1), an employment tribunal may—
(a) allow the appeal and cancel the penalty notice;
(b) in the case of an appeal made on the ground that the calculation of an amount stated in the penalty notice was incorrect, allow the appeal and substitute the correct amount for the amount stated in the penalty notice;
(c) dismiss the appeal.

(5) Where an employer has made an appeal under subsection (1), the penalty notice is not enforceable until the appeal has been withdrawn or finally determined.

37H Interest and recovery

(1) This section applies if all or part of a financial penalty which an employer is required by a penalty notice to pay is unpaid at the end of the relevant period.

(2) The relevant period is—
(a) if no appeal is made under section 37G(1) relating to the penalty notice, the period specified in the penalty notice under section 37F(3)(e);
(b) if such an appeal is made, the period ending when the appeal is withdrawn or finally determined.

(3) The outstanding amount of the financial penalty for the time being carries interest—
(a) at the rate that, on the last day of the relevant period, was specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838,
(b) from the end of the relevant period until the time when the amount of interest calculated under this subsection equals the amount of the financial penalty,

(and does not also carry interest as a judgment debt under that section).

(4) The outstanding amount of a penalty and any interest is recoverable—
(a) in England and Wales, if the county court so orders, under section 85 of the County Courts Act 1984 or otherwise as if the sum were payable under an order of the county court;
(b) in Scotland, by diligence as if the penalty notice were an extract registered decree arbitral bearing a warrant for execution issued by the sheriff court of any sheriffdom in Scotland.

(5) Any amount received by the Secretary of State under this Part is to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

37I Withdrawal of warning notice

(1) Where—
(a) a warning notice has been given (and not already withdrawn),

(b) it appears to an enforcement officer that—
(i) the notice incorrectly omits any statement or is incorrect in any particular, or
(ii) the warning notice was given in contravention of section 37E(3), and
(c) if a penalty notice has been given in relation to the warning notice, any appeal made under section 37G(1) has not been determined,

the officer may withdraw the warning notice by giving notice of withdrawal to the employer.

(2) Where a warning notice is withdrawn, no penalty notice may be given in relation to it.

(3) Where a warning notice is withdrawn after a penalty notice has been given in relation to it—
(a) the penalty notice ceases to have effect;
(b) any sum paid by or recovered from the employer by way of financial penalty payable under the penalty notice must be repaid to the employer with interest at the appropriate rate running from the date when the sum was paid or recovered;
(c) any appeal under section 37G(1) relating to the penalty notice must be dismissed.

(4) In subsection (3)(b), the appropriate rate means the rate that, on the date the sum was paid or recovered, was specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838.

(5) A notice of withdrawal under this section must indicate the effect of the withdrawal (but a failure to do so does not make the notice of withdrawal ineffective).

(6) Withdrawal of a warning notice relating to a relevant sum does not preclude a further warning notice being given in relation to that sum (subject to section 37E(3)).

37J Withdrawal of penalty notice

(1) Where—
(a) a penalty notice has been given (and not already withdrawn or cancelled), and
(b) it appears to an enforcement officer that—
(i) the notice incorrectly omits any statement required by section 37F(3), or
(ii) any statement so required is incorrect in any particular,

the officer may withdraw it by giving notice of the withdrawal to the employer.

(2) Where a penalty notice is withdrawn and no replacement penalty notice is given in accordance with section 37K—
(a) any sum paid by or recovered from the employer by way of financial penalty payable under the notice must be repaid to the employer with interest at the appropriate rate running from the date when the sum was paid or recovered;

(b) any appeal under section 37G(1) relating to the penalty notice must be dismissed.

(3) In a case where subsection (2) applies, the notice of withdrawal must indicate the effect of that subsection (but a failure to do so does not make the withdrawal ineffective).

(4) In subsection (2)(a), "the appropriate rate" means the rate that, on the date the sum was paid or recovered, was specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838.

37K Replacement penalty notice

(1) Where an enforcement officer—

(a) withdraws a penalty notice ("the original penalty notice") under section 37J, and

(b) is satisfied that the employer failed to pay the specified amount in full before the specified date in accordance with the warning notice in relation to which the original penalty notice was given,

the officer may at the same time give another penalty notice in relation to the warning notice ("the replacement penalty notice").

(2) The replacement penalty notice must—

(a) indicate the differences between it and the original penalty notice that the enforcement officer reasonably considers material, and

(b) indicate the effect of section 37L.

(3) Failure to comply with subsection (2) does not make the replacement penalty notice ineffective.

(4) Where a replacement penalty notice is withdrawn under section 37J, no further replacement penalty notice may be given under subsection (1) pursuant to the withdrawal.

(5) Nothing in this section affects any power that arises apart from this section to give a penalty notice.

37L Effect of replacement penalty notice

(1) This section applies where a penalty notice is withdrawn under section 37J and a replacement penalty notice is given in accordance with section 37K.

(2) If an appeal relating to the original penalty notice has been made under section 37G(1) and has not been withdrawn or finally determined before the time when that notice is withdrawn—

(a) the appeal ("the earlier appeal") is to have effect after that time as if it were against the replacement penalty notice, and

(b) the employer may exercise the right under section 37G to appeal against the replacement penalty notice only after withdrawing the earlier appeal.

(3) If a sum was paid by or recovered from the employer by way of financial penalty under the original penalty notice—

(a) an amount equal to that sum (or, if more than one, the total of those sums) is to be treated as having been paid in respect of the replacement penalty notice, and

(b) any amount by which that sum (or total) exceeds the amount of the financial penalty payable under the replacement penalty notice must be repaid to the employer with interest at the appropriate rate running from the date when the sum (or, if more than one, the first of them) was paid or recovered.

(4) In subsection (3)(b) "the appropriate rate" means the rate that, on the date mentioned in that provision, was specified in section 17 of the Judgments Act 1838.

37M Enforcement officers

The Secretary of State may appoint or authorise persons to act as enforcement officers for the purposes of this Part.

37N Power to amend Part 2A

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations—
(a) amend subsection (5) or (6) of section 37F by substituting a different amount;
(b) amend subsection (4) or (8) of that section by substituting a different percentage;
(c) amend section 37E(4) or 37F(7) or (9) by substituting a different number of days.

(2) Any provision that could be made by regulations under this section may instead be included in an order under section 12A(12).

37O Modification in particular cases

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for this Part to apply with modifications in cases where—
(a) two or more financial awards were made against an employer on claims relating to different workers that were considered together by an employment tribunal, or
(b) settlement sums are payable by an employer under two or more settlements in cases dealt with together by a conciliation officer.

(2) Regulations under subsection (1) may in particular provide for any provision of this Part to apply as if any such financial awards or settlement sums, taken together, were a single relevant sum.

(3) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for this Part to apply with modifications in cases where a financial award has been made against an employer but is not regarded as outstanding by virtue only of the fact that an application for an order for a costs sum has not been finally determined (or any appeal within section 37B(3)(c) so far as relating to the application could still be made or has not been withdrawn or finally determined).

(4) Regulations under subsection (3) may in particular provide—
(a) for any provision of this Part to apply, or to apply if the enforcement officer so determines, as if the application had not been, and could not be, made;
(b) for any costs sum the amount of which is subsequently determined, or the order for which is subsequently made, to be treated for the purposes of this Part as a separate relevant sum.

37P Giving of notices

(1) For the purposes of section 7 of the Interpretation Act 1978 in its application to this Part, the proper address of an employer is—

(a) if the employer has notified an enforcement officer of an address at which the employer is willing to accept notices, that address;

(b) otherwise—

(i) in the case of a body corporate, the address of the body's registered or principal office;

(ii) in the case of a partnership or an unincorporated body or association, the principal office of the partnership, body or association;

(iii) in any other case, the last known address of the person in question.

(2) In the case of—

(a) a body corporate registered outside the United Kingdom,

(b) a partnership carrying on business outside the United Kingdom, or

(c) an unincorporated body or association with offices outside the United Kingdom,

the references in subsection (1) to its principal office include references to its principal office within the United Kingdom (if any).

37Q Financial penalties for non-payment: interpretation

(1) In this Part, the following terms have the following meanings—

"claim"—

(a) means anything that is referred to in the relevant legislation as a claim, a complaint or a reference, other than a reference made by virtue of section 122(2) or 128(2) of the Equality Act 2010 (reference by court of question about a non-discrimination or equality rule etc), and

(b) also includes an application, under regulations made under section 45 of the Employment Act 2002, for a declaration that a person is a permanent employee;

"costs sum" has the meaning given by section 37A;

"employer" has the same meaning as in section 12A;

"enforcement officer" means a person appointed or authorised to act under section 37M;

"financial award" has the meaning given by section 37A;

"penalty notice" has the meaning given by section 37F;

"relevant appeal" has the meaning given by section 37A;

"relevant sum" has the meaning given by section 37A;

"settlement sum" has the meaning given by section 37A;

"specified amount" and "specified date", in relation to a warning notice or a penalty notice given in relation to it, have the meanings given by section 37E(2);

"unpaid amount"—

(a) in relation to a financial award, has the meaning given by section 37B;

(b) in relation to a settlement sum, has the meaning given by section 37C;

subject, in each case, to section 37D;

"warning notice" has the meaning given by section 37E(2);

"worker" has the same meaning as in section 12A.

(2) References in this Part to an employer, in relation to a warning notice or penalty notice, are to the person to whom the notice is given (whether or not the person is an employer at the time in question).

(3) For the purposes of this Part a relevant sum is to be regarded as having been paid in full when the amount unpaid in respect of that sum on the date of payment has been paid.

(4) For the purposes of this Part, a penalty notice is given in relation to a warning notice if it is given as the result of a failure by the employer to pay the specified amount before the specified date.

(5) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this section so as to alter the meaning of "claim".

(6) Any provision that could be made by regulations under subsection (5) may instead be included in an order under section 12A(12)."

(3) In section 12A (financial penalties), after subsection (12) insert—

"(12A) Any provision that could be made by an order under subsection (12) may instead—

(a) in the case of provision that could be made under paragraph (a) or (b) of that subsection, be included in regulations under section 37N;

(b) in the case of provision that could be made under paragraph (c) of that subsection, be included in regulations under section 37Q."

(4) In section 19A (conciliation: recovery of sums payable under settlements), after subsection (10) insert—

"(10A) A term of any document which is a relevant document for the purposes of subsection (1) is void to the extent that it purports to prevent the disclosure of any provision of any such document to a person appointed or authorised to act under section 37M."

(5) In section 41 (orders, regulations and rules), in subsection (2)—

(a) after "38(4)," omit "and";

(b) after "40," insert "and no regulations are to be made under section 37N, 37O or 37Q(5),";

(c) for "or order" substitute ", order or regulations",

and in subsection (3)(b) for "regulations" substitute "any other regulations".

(6) In section 42(1) (interpretation), after "In this Act" insert "(except where otherwise expressly provided)".

(7) In section 251B of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992 (prohibition on disclosure of information by ACAS), in subsection (2),

after paragraph (c) insert—

"(ca) the disclosure is made for the purpose of enabling or assisting an enforcement officer within the meaning of Part 2A of the Employment Tribunals Act 1996 to carry out the officer's functions under that Part;".

(8) The amendments made by this section have effect only in relation to relevant sums where—

(a) in the case of a financial award, the decision of the employment tribunal on the claim to which the financial award relates is made on or after the day on which this section comes into force;

(b) in the case of a settlement sum, the certificate under section 19A(1) of the Employment Tribunals Act 1996 in respect of the settlement under whose terms it is payable is issued on or after that day.

151 Employment tribunal procedure regulations: postponements

(1) The Employment Tribunals Act 1996 is amended as follows.

(2) In section 7 (employment tribunal procedure regulations), after subsection (3ZA) insert—

"(3ZB) Provision in employment tribunal procedure regulations about postponement of hearings may include provision for limiting the number of relevant postponements available to a party to proceedings.

(3ZC) For the purposes of subsection (3ZB)—

(a) "relevant postponement", in relation to a party to proceedings, means the postponement of a hearing granted on the application of that party in—

(i) the proceedings, or

(ii) any other proceedings identified in accordance with the regulations,

except in circumstances determined in accordance with the regulations, and

(b) "postponement" includes adjournment."

(3) In section 13 (costs and expenses), after subsection (2) insert—

"(3) Provision included in employment tribunal procedure regulations under subsection (1) must include provision for requiring an employment tribunal, in any proceedings in which a late postponement application has been granted, to consider whether to make an award against the party who made the application in respect of any costs or expenses connected with the postponement, except in circumstances specified in the regulations.

(4) For the purposes of subsection (3)—

(a) a late postponement application is an application for the postponement of a hearing in the proceedings which is made after a time determined in accordance with the regulations (whether before or after the hearing has begun), and

(b) "postponement" includes adjournment."

(4) In section 13A (payments in respect of preparation time), after subsection (2)

insert—

"(2A) Provision included in employment tribunal procedure regulations under subsection (1) must include provision for requiring an employment tribunal, in any proceedings in which a late postponement application has been granted, to consider whether to make an order of the kind mentioned in subsection (1) against the party who made the application in respect of any time spent in connection with the postponement, except in circumstances specified in the regulations.

(2B) For the purposes of subsection (2A)—

(a) a late postponement application is an application for the postponement of a hearing in the proceedings which is made after a time determined in accordance with the regulations (whether before or after the hearing has begun), and

(b) "postponement" includes adjournment."

National minimum wage

152 Amount of financial penalty for underpayment of national minimum wage

(1) Section 19A of the National Minimum Wage Act 1998 (notices of underpayment: financial penalty) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (4), for the words following "to be" substitute "the total of the amounts for all workers to whom the notice relates calculated in accordance with subsections (5) to (5B)."

(3) For subsection (5) substitute—

"(5) The amount for each worker to whom the notice relates is the relevant percentage of the amount specified under section 19(4)(c) in respect of each pay reference period specified under section 19(4)(b).

(5A) In subsection (5), "the relevant percentage", in relation to any pay reference period, means 100%.

(5B) If the amount as calculated under subsection (5) for any worker would be more than £20,000, the amount for the worker taken into account in calculating the financial penalty is to be £20,000."

(4) Omit subsection (7).

(5) In subsection (8)—

(a) in paragraph (a), for "(4)" substitute "(5A)";

(b) in paragraph (b), for "(6) or (7)" substitute "(5B) or (6)".

(6) The amendments made by this section have effect in relation to notices of underpayment which relate only to pay reference periods commencing on or after the day on which this section comes into force.

Exclusivity in zero hours contracts

153 Exclusivity terms unenforceable in zero hours contracts

(1) The Employment Rights Act 1996 is amended as follows.

(2) After section 27 insert—

"PART 2A

ZERO HOURS WORKERS

"27A Exclusivity terms unenforceable in zero hours contracts

(1) In this section "zero hours contract" means a contract of employment or other worker's contract under which—
  (a) the undertaking to do or perform work or services is an undertaking to do so conditionally on the employer making work or services available to the worker, and
  (b) there is no certainty that any such work or services will be made available to the worker.

(2) For this purpose, an employer makes work or services available to a worker if the employer requests or requires the worker to do the work or perform the services.

(3) Any provision of a zero hours contract which—
  (a) prohibits the worker from doing work or performing services under another contract or under any other arrangement, or
  (b) prohibits the worker from doing so without the employer's consent,

is unenforceable against the worker.

(4) Subsection (3) is to be disregarded for the purposes of determining any question whether a contract is a contract of employment or other worker's contract.

27B Power to make further provision in relation to zero hours workers

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision for the purpose of securing that zero hours workers, or any description of zero hours workers, are not restricted by any provision or purported provision of their contracts or arrangements with their employers from doing any work otherwise than under those contracts or arrangements.

(2) In this section, "zero hours workers" means—
  (a) employees or other workers who work under zero hours contracts;
  (b) individuals who work under non-contractual zero hours arrangements;
  (c) individuals who work under worker's contracts of a kind specified by the regulations.

(3) The worker's contracts which may be specified by virtue of subsection (2)(c) are those in relation to which the Secretary of State considers it appropriate for provision made by the regulations to apply, having regard, in particular, to provision made by the worker's contracts as to income, rate of pay or working hours.

(4) In this section "non-contractual zero hours arrangement" means an arrangement other than a worker's contract under which—
  (a) an employer and an individual agree terms on which the individual will do any work where the employer makes it

available to the individual and the individual agrees to do it, but

(b) the employer is not required to make any work available to the individual, nor the individual required to accept it,

and in this section "employer", in relation to a non-contractual zero hours arrangement, is to be read accordingly.

(5) Provision that may be made by regulations under subsection (1) includes provision for—

(a) modifying—

(i) zero hours contracts;

(ii) non-contractual zero hours arrangements;

(iii) other worker's contracts;

(b) imposing financial penalties on employers;

(c) requiring employers to pay compensation to zero hours workers;

(d) conferring jurisdiction on employment tribunals;

(e) conferring rights on zero hours workers.

(6) Provision that may be made by virtue of subsection (5)(a) may, in particular, include provision for exclusivity terms in prescribed categories of worker's contracts to be unenforceable, in cases in which section 27A does not apply.

For this purpose an exclusivity term is any term by virtue of which a worker is restricted from doing any work otherwise than under the worker's contract.

(7) Regulations under this section may—

(a) make different provision for different purposes;

(b) make provision subject to exceptions.

(8) For the purposes of this section—

(a) "zero hours contract" has the same meaning as in section 27A;

(b) an employer makes work available to an individual if the employer requests or requires the individual to do it;

(c) references to work and doing work include references to services and performing them.

(9) Nothing in this section is to be taken to affect any worker's contract except so far as any regulations made under this section expressly apply in relation to it."

(3) In section 236(3) (orders and regulations subject to affirmative procedure), after "made under section" insert "27B,".

Public sector exit payments

154 Regulations in connection with public sector exit payments

(1) Regulations may make provision requiring the repayment of some or all of any qualifying exit payment in qualifying circumstances (see section 155).

(2) The regulations may make such other provision in connection with the repayment mentioned in subsection (1) as the person making the regulations thinks fit.

(3) A qualifying exit payment is a payment of a prescribed description—
  (a) made to an employee of a prescribed public sector authority in consequence of the employee leaving employment, or
  (b) made to a holder of a prescribed public sector office in consequence of the office holder leaving office.

(4) The descriptions of payment which may be prescribed by virtue of subsection (3) include—
  (a) any payment on account of dismissal by reason of redundancy (read in accordance with section 139 of the Employment Rights Act 1996),
  (b) any payment on voluntary exit,
  (c) any payment to reduce or eliminate an actuarial reduction to a pension on early retirement,
  (d) any severance payment or other ex gratia payment,
  (e) any payment in respect of an outstanding entitlement (such as to annual leave or an allowance),
  (f) any payment of compensation under the terms of a contract,
  (g) any payment in lieu of notice, and
  (h) any payment in the form of shares or share options.

(5) If more than one qualifying exit payment is payable to an employee or office holder the provision made in the exit payments regulations is to apply in relation to the aggregated payments.

(6) For the purposes of this section and sections 155 and 157—
  an "exit payee" is an employee or office holder to whom any qualifying exit payment is payable,
  the "exit payments regulations" are regulations under subsection (1),
  a "responsible authority" means an authority by which any qualifying exit payments are payable, and
  "prescribed" means prescribed by the exit payments regulations.

155 Section 154(1): further provision

(1) For the purposes of section 154(1) circumstances are qualifying circumstances if—
  (a) an exit payee becomes—
    (i) an employee or a contractor of a prescribed public sector authority, or
    (ii) a holder of a prescribed public sector office,
  (b) less than one year has elapsed between the exit payee leaving the employment or office in respect of which a qualifying exit payment is payable and the event mentioned in paragraph (a), and
  (c) any other prescribed conditions are met.

(2) The exit payment regulations may, in particular, make provision—
  (a) exempting an exit payee from the requirement to repay in the prescribed circumstances;

(b) exempting some or all of a qualifying exit payment from that requirement in the prescribed circumstances;

(c) for the amount required to be repaid to be tapered according to the time which has elapsed between an exit payee leaving employment or office and the event mentioned in subsection (1)(a);

(d) imposing duties, in connection with a qualifying exit payment, on—

(i) an exit payee,

(ii) a responsible authority, and

(iii) a subsequent authority;

(e) as to the arrangements required to be made by an exit payee to repay to a responsible authority the amount of a qualifying exit payment required to be repaid;

(f) for preventing an exit payee from becoming an employee or a contractor, or a holder of a public sector office, as mentioned in subsection (1)(a) until the arrangements required by virtue of paragraph (e) have been made;

(g) as to the consequences of an exit payee failing to repay the amount required to be repaid (including the dismissal of the exit payee).

(3) In subsection (2)(d)(iii) a "subsequent authority" means—

(a) in relation to an exit payee who becomes an employee or a contractor, a public sector authority of which the exit payee becomes an employee or a contractor, or

(b) in relation to an exit payee who becomes a holder of a public sector office, an authority which is responsible for the appointment.

(4) For the purposes of this section an exit payee becomes a contractor of a public sector authority if the exit payee provides services to the authority under a contract for services.

156 Power to make regulations to be exercisable by the Treasury or Scottish Ministers

(1) The power to make regulations under section 154(1) is exercisable—

(a) by the Scottish Ministers in relation to payments made by a relevant Scottish authority;

(b) by the Treasury in relation to any other payments,

(but this subsection is subject to subsection (2)).

(2) Where the relevant Scottish authority is the Scottish Administration the power to make regulations under section 154(1) is exercisable by the Treasury (instead of the Scottish Ministers) in relation to payments made to—

(a) the holders of offices in the Scottish Administration which are not ministerial offices (read in accordance with section 126(8) of the Scotland Act 1998), and

(b) the members of the staff of the Scottish Administration (read in accordance with section 126(7)(b) of that Act).

(3) In this section "relevant Scottish authority" means—

(a) the Scottish Parliamentary Corporate Body, or

(b) any authority which wholly or mainly exercises functions which would be within devolved competence (within the meaning of section 54 of the Scotland Act 1998).

(4) The first regulations under section 154(1)—
  (a) if made by the Treasury, are subject to affirmative resolution procedure;
  (b) if made by the Scottish Ministers, are subject to the affirmative procedure.

(5) Any other regulations under section 154(1)—
  (a) if made by the Treasury, are subject to negative resolution procedure;
  (b) if made by the Scottish Ministers, are subject to the negative procedure.

157 Power of Secretary of State to waive repayment requirement

(1) The Secretary of State may waive the whole or any part of any repayment required by regulations made by the Treasury under section 154(1).

(2) The Scottish Ministers may waive the whole or any part of any repayment required by regulations made by the Scottish Ministers under section 154(1).

(3) A waiver may be given in respect of—
  (a) a particular exit payee, or
  (b) a description of exit payees.

(4) The exit payments regulations made by the Treasury may—
  (a) make provision for the power under subsection (1) to be exercisable on behalf of the Secretary of State by a prescribed person,
  (b) make provision for a waiver to be given only—
    (i) with the consent of the Treasury, or
    (ii) following compliance with any directions given by the Treasury, and
  (c) make provision as to the publication of information about any waivers given.

(5) The exit payments regulations made by the Scottish Ministers may—
  (a) make provision for the power under subsection (2) to be exercisable on behalf of the Scottish Ministers by a prescribed person,
  (b) make provision for a waiver to be given only—
    (i) with the consent of the Scottish Ministers, or
    (ii) following compliance with any directions given by the Scottish Ministers,
  (where provision is made by virtue of paragraph (a)), and
  (c) make provision as to the publication of information about any waivers given.

(6) The exit payments regulations made by the Treasury may make provision for the power conferred on the Secretary of State by subsection (1) to be exercised instead—
  (a) by the Department of Finance and Personnel in Northern Ireland, in relation to qualifying exit payments made by responsible authorities who wholly or mainly exercise functions which could be conferred by provision included in an Act of the Northern Ireland Assembly made without the consent of the Secretary of State (see sections 6 to 8 of the Northern Ireland Act 1998);
  (b) by the Welsh Ministers, in relation to qualifying exit payments made by responsible authorities who wholly or mainly exercise functions which

could be conferred by provision falling within the legislative competence of the National Assembly for Wales (as defined in section 108 of the Government of Wales Act 2006).

Concessionary coal

158 Concessionary coal

(1) This section applies to an entitlement to concessionary coal or payments in lieu of concessionary coal—
  (a) arising in connection with employment by a company which on 1 January 2014 was carrying on the business of deep coal-mining in the United Kingdom, and
  (b) which is not being met otherwise than by virtue of this section.

(2) The Secretary of State may, out of money provided by Parliament, make such payments as the Secretary of State considers appropriate for the purpose of securing that an entitlement to which this section applies is met.

(3) Payments under this section may be made only with the consent of the Treasury.

(4) "Concessionary coal" means coal or other solid fuel supplied free of charge or at reduced prices.

PART 12

GENERAL

159 Consequential amendments, repeals and revocations

(1) A Minister of the Crown may by regulations make such provision as the Minister considers appropriate in consequence of this Act (other than sections 35 and 36 as they apply in Wales).

(2) The power conferred by subsection (1) includes power—
  (a) to make transitional, transitory or saving provision;
  (b) to amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision made by or under an enactment (including an enactment contained in this Act and any enactment passed or made in the same Session as this Act).

(3) Subject to subsection (4)(b), regulations under subsection (1) which amend, repeal or revoke any provision of primary legislation are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(4) Regulations under subsection (1) which—
  (a) do not amend, repeal or revoke any provision of primary legislation, or
  (b) amend, repeal or revoke any provision of primary legislation only in connection with there ceasing to be any share warrants (see section 84),

are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(5) The Welsh Ministers may by regulations make such provision as they consider appropriate in consequence of section 35 or 36 as it applies in Wales.

(6) The power conferred by subsection (5) includes power—
  (a) to make transitional, transitory or saving provision;

(b) to amend, repeal, revoke or otherwise modify any provision made by or under any Act (including this Act and any Act passed in the same Session as this Act) or any Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales.

(7) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (5) which amend or repeal an Act or a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales may not be made unless a draft of the instrument has been laid before, and approved by a resolution of, the National Assembly for Wales.

(8) A statutory instrument containing regulations under subsection (5), other than a statutory instrument within subsection (7), is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of the National Assembly for Wales.

(9) In this Part—

"enactment" includes an Act of the Scottish Parliament, a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales and Northern Ireland legislation;

"Minister of the Crown" has the same meaning as in the Ministers of the Crown Act 1975;

"primary legislation" means—

(a) an Act of Parliament,

(b) an Act of the Scottish Parliament,

(c) a Measure or Act of the National Assembly for Wales, and

(d) Northern Ireland legislation.

160 Transitional, transitory or saving provision

(1) A Minister of the Crown may by regulations make such transitional, transitory or saving provision as the Minister considers appropriate in connection with the coming into force of this Act (other than sections 35 and 36 as they apply in Wales).

(2) The Welsh Ministers may by regulations make such transitional, transitory or saving provision as they consider appropriate in connection with the coming into force of section 35 or 36 as it applies in Wales.

161 Supplementary provision about regulations

(1) Regulations under this Act, other than regulations made by the Scottish Ministers under section 1 or 154(1), are to be made by statutory instrument.

(2) Regulations under this Act may make—

(a) different provision for different purposes or cases;

(b) different provision for different areas;

(c) provision generally or for specific cases;

(d) provision subject to exceptions;

(e) incidental, supplementary, consequential, transitional or transitory provision or savings.

(3) Where regulations under this Act are subject to "negative resolution procedure" the statutory instrument containing the regulations is subject to annulment in pursuance of a resolution of either House of Parliament.

(4) Where regulations under this Act are subject to "affirmative resolution procedure" the regulations may not be made unless a draft of the statutory

instrument containing them has been laid before Parliament and approved by a resolution of each House of Parliament.

(5) Any provision that may be included in an instrument under this Act for which no Parliamentary procedure is prescribed may be made by regulations subject to negative or affirmative resolution procedure.

(6) Any provision that may be included in an instrument under this Act subject to negative resolution procedure may be made by regulations subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

162 Financial provisions

There is to be paid out of money provided by Parliament—

(a) any expenditure incurred under or by virtue of this Act by a Minister of the Crown, and

(b) any increase attributable to this Act in the sums payable under any other Act out of money so provided.

163 Extent

(1) Subject to subsections (2) to (4), this Act extends to England and Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland.

(2) Any amendment, repeal or revocation made by this Act has the same extent as the enactment amended, repealed or revoked, except the amendments made by sections 113 and 114, which extend as mentioned in subsection (1).

(3) Part 4 extends to England and Wales only.

(4) In Part 10, sections 144 to 146 and Schedule 11 extend to England and Wales and Scotland only.

164 Commencement

(1) The provisions of this Act come into force on such day as a Minister of the Crown may by regulations appoint, subject to subsections (2) to (5).

(2) The following provisions of this Act come into force on the day this Act is passed—

(a) in Part 1, sections 4 to 7 (regulations about financial information on small and medium sized businesses);

(b) in Part 3, section 39 (regulations about procurement);

(c) in Part 5, section 74 (funding for free of charge early years provision);

(d) in Part 11, section 151 (employment tribunal procedure regulations: postponements);

(e) this Part.

(3) The following provisions of this Act come into force at the end of the period of two months beginning with the day on which this Act is passed—

(a) in Part 1—

(i) sections 1 and 2 (power to invalidate certain restrictive terms of business contracts),

(ii) section 3 (companies: duty to publish report on payment practices),

(iii) sections 8 and 9 (VAT registration information),
(iv) sections 10 to 12 (exports), and
(v) section 14 (powers of the Payment Systems Regulator);

(b) in Part 2—
(i) sections 15 and 16 (streamlined company registration),
(ii) sections 21 to 27 (business impact target), and
(iii) section 37 (CMA to publish recommendations on proposals for Westminster legislation);

(c) in Part 3, section 40 (investigation of procurement functions);

(d) in Part 4—
(i) sections 42 to 44 (the Pubs Code), and
(ii) sections 68 to 73 (Part 4: supplementary);

(e) in Part 5, section 75 (exemption from requirement to register as early years provider);

(f) Part 6;

(g) in Part 7—
(i) section 83 (amendment of section 813 of the Companies Act 2006),
(ii) sections 84 to 86 and Schedule 4 (abolition of share warrants to bearer), and
(iii) sections 89 to 91 (shadow directors);

(h) in Part 8—
(i) section 95 (recording of optional information on register),
(ii) section 99 (address of company registered office);

(i) in Part 10—
(i) sections 120 and 121 (removing requirements to seek sanction),
(ii) sections 127 to 130 (administration),
(iii) sections 131 and 132 (small debts),
(iv) sections 134 and 135 (voluntary arrangements), and
(v) section 136 (voluntary winding-up: progress reports);

(j) in Part 11, section 158 (concessionary coal).

(4) Section 13 (electronic paying in of cheques etc) comes into force—
(a) on the day this Act is passed, for the purpose of enabling the making of regulations under Part 4A of the Bills of Exchange Act 1882 (as inserted by section 13);
(b) on 31 July 2016, for all other purposes.

(5) Sections 35 and 36 as they apply in Wales come into force on such day as the Welsh Ministers may by regulations appoint.

(6) Before making regulations under subsection (1) in relation to section 112 and Schedule 8, the Secretary of State must consult the Department of Enterprise, Trade and Investment in Northern Ireland.

165 Short title

This Act may be cited as the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015.

SCHEDULES

SCHEDULE 1

Section 41

THE PUBS CODE ADJUDICATOR

PART 1

THE PUBS CODE ADJUDICATOR

Status

1 The Adjudicator is a corporation sole.

2 The Adjudicator carries out functions on behalf of the Crown.

Appointment

3 The Adjudicator is to be appointed by the Secretary of State.

Deputy Adjudicator

4 The Secretary of State may appoint a Deputy Adjudicator.

5 The Deputy Adjudicator may carry out any of the Adjudicator's functions.

Term of office etc

6 A person holds and vacates office as the Adjudicator or Deputy Adjudicator in accordance with the terms of the appointment, but—

(a) the initial term of office may not be more than 4 years,

(b) a person may be appointed for no more than 2 further terms of office,

(c) a further term may not be more than 3 years,

(d) the person may resign by giving written notice to the Secretary of State, and

(e) the Secretary of State may dismiss the person if satisfied that the person is unable, unwilling or unfit to perform the person's functions.

7 Service as the Adjudicator, or as the Deputy Adjudicator, is not service in the civil service of the state.

Remuneration

8 (1) The Adjudicator may pay to or in respect of the person holding office as the Adjudicator or Deputy Adjudicator—

(a) remuneration;

(b) allowances;
(c) sums by way of or in respect of pensions.

(2) The Secretary of State must determine rates and eligibility criteria for the payments.

Staff

9 (1) The Adjudicator may make arrangements for persons to be seconded to the Adjudicator to serve as members of the Adjudicator's staff.

(2) The arrangements may include provision for payments by the Adjudicator to the person with whom the arrangements are made, or directly to seconded staff (or both).

(3) A period of secondment to the Adjudicator does not affect the continuity of a person's employment with the employer from whose service he or she is seconded (and a person employed in the civil service of the State continues to be so employed during any period of secondment to the Adjudicator).

(4) Before making arrangements under sub-paragraph (1), the Adjudicator must obtain the approval of the Secretary of State as to the Adjudicator's policies on—
(a) the number of staff to be seconded;
(b) payments to be made to or in respect of seconded staff;
(c) the terms and conditions on which staff are to be seconded.

Conflicts of interest

10 (1) The Adjudicator must make procedural arrangements for dealing with any conflict of interest affecting—
(a) the Adjudicator,
(b) the Deputy Adjudicator, or
(c) staff working for the Adjudicator.

(2) The Adjudicator must consult the Secretary of State before making or revising the arrangements.

(3) The Adjudicator must publish a summary of the arrangements.

11 (1) This paragraph applies if both the Adjudicator and the Deputy Adjudicator are unable to act in relation to a matter because of conflicts of interest.

(2) The Secretary of State must appoint a person to act as a Deputy Adjudicator if asked to do so by the Adjudicator.

(3) An acting Deputy Adjudicator may carry out any of the Adjudicator's functions for the purpose of dealing with the matter in respect of which the acting Deputy Adjudicator is appointed.

(4) A person holds and vacates office as an acting Deputy Adjudicator in accordance with the terms of the person's appointment (subject to sub-paragraph (5)).

(5) Paragraphs 6(d) and (e), 7 and 8 apply to an acting Deputy Adjudicator as they apply to the Deputy Adjudicator.

Validity of acts

12 A defect in appointment does not affect the validity of things done by—
(a) the Adjudicator,
(b) the Deputy Adjudicator, or
(c) an acting Deputy Adjudicator.

Application of seal and proof of documents

13 The application of the Adjudicator's seal must be authenticated by the signature of—
(a) the Adjudicator, or
(b) some other person who has been authorised by the Adjudicator for that purpose (whether generally or specially).

14 A document purporting to be duly executed under the seal—
(a) is to be received in evidence, and
(b) is to be treated as duly executed unless the contrary is shown.

Accounts

15 (1) The Adjudicator must keep proper accounts and proper records in relation to the accounts.

(2) For each financial year, the Adjudicator must prepare a statement of accounts in respect of that financial year.

(3) The statement must be in whatever form the Secretary of State directs.

(4) The Adjudicator must send a copy of the statement, within a period specified by the Secretary of State, to—
(a) the Secretary of State, and
(b) the Comptroller and Auditor General.

(5) After the Adjudicator has sent a copy of a statement of accounts to the Comptroller and Auditor General, the Comptroller and Auditor General must—
(a) examine, certify and report on the statement, and
(b) send a copy of the certified statement and the report to the Secretary of State as soon as possible.

(6) The Secretary of State must lay before Parliament a copy of the certified statement and the report.

Incidental powers

16 The Adjudicator may do anything that is calculated to facilitate the carrying out of the Adjudicator's functions or is conducive or incidental to the carrying out of those functions.

Assistance from the Secretary of State

17 The Secretary of State may provide staff, premises, facilities or other assistance to the Adjudicator (with or without charge).

Exemption from liability for damages

18 (1) The following are exempt from liability in damages for anything done or omitted in the exercise or purported exercise of their functions—
(a) the Adjudicator;
(b) the Deputy Adjudicator;
(c) acting Deputy Adjudicators;
(d) staff working for the Adjudicator.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply—
(a) if the act or omission is shown to have been in bad faith, or
(b) so as to prevent an award of damages made in respect of an act or omission on the ground that the act or omission was unlawful as a result of section 6(1) of the Human Rights Act 1998.

PART 2

INFORMATION POWERS OF THE PUBS CODE ADJUDICATOR

19 (1) The Adjudicator may, for the purposes of an investigation, require a person—
(a) to provide documents in the person's possession or control;
(b) to provide other information in the person's possession or control.

(2) The Adjudicator may, for the purposes of monitoring whether a pub-owning business has followed a recommendation made under section 56, require the business—
(a) to provide documents in the possession or control of the business;
(b) to provide other information in the possession or control of the business.

(3) The Adjudicator may, for the purposes of exercising functions in relation to the offer of a market rent only option or the provision of parallel rent assessments, require a person—
(a) to provide documents in the person's possession or control;
(b) to provide other information in the person's possession or control.

(4) A requirement imposed under this paragraph may include a requirement for information to be provided orally.

(5) A requirement is imposed by giving written notice specifying—
(a) to whom the information is to be provided,
(b) where it is to be provided,
(c) when, or the time by which, it is to be provided, and
(d) the form and manner in which it is to be provided.

(6) A notice must also explain the possible consequences of failing to comply.

(7) If a notice requires an individual to attend at a particular place, the Adjudicator must offer to pay necessary travelling expenses.

(8) A person may not be required under this paragraph to do anything that the person could not be compelled to do in civil proceedings before the High Court.

20 (1) It is an offence for a person intentionally to fail to comply with a requirement under this Part of this Schedule.

(2) It is a defence for a person charged with that offence to prove that there was a reasonable excuse for the person's failure.

21 It is an offence for a person knowingly to provide false information in response to a requirement under this Part of this Schedule.

22 A person guilty of an offence under this Part of this Schedule is liable—
(a) on summary conviction, to a fine;
(b) on conviction on indictment, to a fine.

PART 3

AMENDMENTS OF LEGISLATION

23 In Schedule 2 to the Parliamentary Commissioner Act 1967 (departments etc subject to investigation) at the appropriate place insert—
"Pubs Code Adjudicator."

24 In Part 3 of Schedule 1 to the House of Commons Disqualification Act 1975 (other disqualifying offices) at the appropriate places insert—
"Member of staff of the Pubs Code Adjudicator."
"Pubs Code Adjudicator or Deputy Pubs Code Adjudicator."

25 In Part 6 of Schedule 1 to the Freedom of Information Act 2000 (public authorities) at the appropriate place insert—
"Pubs Code Adjudicator."

26 In each of Schedules 14 and 15 to the Enterprise Act 2002 (provisions about disclosure of information) at the appropriate place insert—
"Part 4 of the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015."

SCHEDULE 2

Section 77

REGISTRATION OF CHILDCARE: PREMISES

Childcare Act 2006

1 The Childcare Act 2006 is amended in accordance with paragraphs 2 to 19.

2 In section 34 (requirement to register: other early years providers)—
(a) in subsection (1), omit "in respect of the premises";
(b) in subsection (1A)(a) and (b), omit "in respect of the premises".

3 In section 36 (applications for registration: other early years providers)—
(a) in subsection (1), omit "on any premises" and "in respect of the premises";
(b) in subsection (1A), omit "on any premises";
(c) in subsection (1A)(a) and (b), omit "in respect of the premises".

4 In section 37 (entry on the register and certificates), in subsection (2)(a) omit ", in respect of the premises in question".

5 In section 37A (early years childminder agencies: registers and certificates), in subsection (2)(a) omit ", in respect of the premises in question".

6 In section 53 (requirement to register: other later years providers)—
(a) in subsection (1), omit "in respect of the premises";
(b) in subsection (1A), in paragraphs (a) and (b) omit "in respect of the premises".

7 In section 55 (applications for registration: other later years providers)—
(a) in subsection (1), omit "on any premises" and "in respect of the premises";
(b) in subsection (1A), omit "on any premises";
(c) in subsection (1A)(a) and (b), omit "in respect of the premises".

8 In section 56 (entry on the register and certificates), in subsection (2)(a) omit ", in respect of the premises in question".

9 In section 56A (later years childminder agencies: registers and certificates), in subsection (2)(a) omit ", in respect of the premises in question".

10 In section 57 (special procedure for providers registered in the early years register), in subsection (2) omit "in respect of particular premises", "on the same premises" and ", in respect of the premises".

11 In section 57A (special procedure for providers registered with early years childminder agencies)—
(a) in subsection (3), omit "in respect of particular premises";
(b) in subsection (4), omit "on the same premises" and ", in respect of the premises".

12 In section 63 (applications for registration on the general register: other childcare providers), in subsection (1), omit "in respect of the premises".

13 In section 64 (entry on the register and certificates), in subsection (2), omit ", in respect of the premises in question".

14 In section 65 (special procedure for persons already registered in a childcare register), in subsection (2) omit "in respect of particular premises", "in respect of the same premises" and ", in respect of the premises".

15 In section 65A (procedure for persons already registered with a childminder agency)—
(a) in subsection (3), omit "in respect of particular premises" and "the provision on the same premises of";
(b) in subsection (4), omit ", in respect of the premises".

16 In section 69 (suspension of registration in a childcare register: early years and later years providers)—
(a) after subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) Regulations under subsection (1) may in particular provide that registration may be suspended generally or only in relation to particular premises.";

(b) in subsection (3), for the words after "childminder" substitute "—

(a) may not provide early years childminding at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended generally in accordance with regulations under this section;

(b) may not provide early years childminding on particular premises at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended in relation to those premises in accordance with regulations under this section.";

(c) in subsection (4), for the words after "childminder" substitute "—

(a) may not provide later years childminding at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended generally in accordance with regulations under this section;

(b) may not provide later years childminding on particular premises at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended in relation to those premises in accordance with regulations under this section.";

(d) in subsection (6), for the words after "childminder" substitute "—

(a) may not provide early years provision at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended generally in accordance with regulations under this section;

(b) may not provide early years provision on particular premises at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended in relation to those premises in accordance with regulations under this section.";

(e) in subsection (7), for the words after "childminder" substitute "—

(a) may not provide later years provision, for a child who has not attained the age of 8, at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended generally in accordance with regulations under this section;

(b) may not provide later years provision, for a child who has not attained the age of 8, on particular premises at any time when his registration under that Chapter is suspended in relation to those premises in accordance with regulations under this section."

17 After section 85 (offence of making false or misleading statement) insert—

"85A Offence of providing provision other than on approved premises

The Secretary of State may by regulations provide—

(a) that a person who without reasonable excuse fails to comply with a prescribed requirement falling within section 35(5)(b), 36(5)(b), 54(5)(b) or 55(5)(b) (premises) is guilty of an offence, and

(b) that a person guilty of the offence is liable on summary conviction to a fine."

18 Omit section 94 (power to amend Part 3: applications in respect of multiple premises).

19 Omit section 105(3)(c) (procedure for an order under section 94) and the "or" immediately preceding it.

Water Industry Act 1991

20 In paragraph 12(1) of Schedule 4A to the Water Industry Act 1991 (premises that are not to be disconnected) omit "in respect of the premises".

SCHEDULE 3

Section 81

REGISTER OF PEOPLE WITH SIGNIFICANT CONTROL

PART 1

DUTY TO OBTAIN INFORMATION AND KEEP REGISTER

1 After Part 21 of the Companies Act 2006 insert—

"PART 21A

INFORMATION ABOUT PEOPLE WITH SIGNIFICANT CONTROL

CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

790A Overview

This Part is arranged as follows—

(a) the remaining provisions of this Chapter identify the companies to which this Part applies and explain some key terms, including what it means to have "significant control" over a company,

(b) Chapter 2 imposes duties on companies to gather information, and on others to supply information, to enable companies to keep the register required by Chapter 3,

(c) Chapter 3 requires companies to keep a register, referred to as a register of people with significant control over the company, and to make the register available to the public,

(d) Chapter 4 gives private companies the option of using an alternative method of record-keeping, and

(e) Chapter 5 makes provision for excluding certain material from the information available to the public.

790B Companies to which this Part applies

(1) This Part applies to companies other than—

(a) DTR5 issuers, and

(b) companies of any description specified by the Secretary of State by regulations.

(2) In deciding whether to specify a description of company, the Secretary of State is to have regard to the extent to which companies of that description are bound by disclosure and transparency rules (in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) broadly similar to the ones applying to DTR5 issuers.

(3) A "DTR5 issuer" is an issuer to which Chapter 5 of the Disclosure Rules and Transparency Rules sourcebook made by the Financial Conduct Authority (as amended or replaced from time to time) applies.

(4) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

790C Key terms

(1) This section explains some key terms used in this Part.

(2) References to a person with (or having) "significant control" over a company are to an individual who meets one or more of the specified conditions in relation to the company.

(3) The "specified conditions" are those specified in Part 1 of Schedule 1A.

(4) Individuals with significant control over a company are either "registrable" or "non-registrable" in relation to the company—

(a) they are "non-registrable" if they do not hold any interest in the company except through one or more other legal entities over each of which they have significant control and each of which is a "relevant legal entity" in relation to the company;

(b) otherwise, they are "registrable",

and references to a "registrable person" in relation to a company are to an individual with significant control over the company who is registrable in relation to that company.

(5) A "legal entity" is a body corporate or a firm that is a legal person under the law by which it is governed.

(6) In relation to a company, a legal entity is a "relevant legal entity" if—

(a) it would have come within the definition of a person with significant control over the company if it had been an individual, and

(b) it is subject to its own disclosure requirements.

(7) A legal entity is "subject to its own disclosure requirements" if—

(a) this Part applies to it (whether by virtue of section 790B or another enactment that extends the application of this Part),

(b) it is a DTR5 issuer,

(c) it is of a description specified in regulations under section 790B (or that section as extended), or

(d) it is of a description specified by the Secretary of State by regulations made under this paragraph.

(8) A relevant legal entity is either "registrable" or "non-registrable" in relation to a company—

(a) it is "non-registrable" if it does not hold any interest in the company except through one or more other legal entities over each of which it has significant control and each of which is also a relevant legal entity in relation to the company;

(b) otherwise, it is "registrable",

and references to a "registrable relevant legal entity" in relation to a company are to a relevant legal entity which is registrable in relation to that company.

(9) For the purposes of subsections (4) and (8)—

(a) whether someone—

(i) holds an interest in a company, or

(ii) holds that interest through another legal entity,

is to be determined in accordance with Part 2 of Schedule 1A;

(b) whether someone has significant control over that other legal entity is to be determined in accordance with subsections (2) and (3) and Part 1 of Schedule 1A, reading references in those provisions to the company as references to that other entity.

(10) The register that a company is required to keep under section 790M (register of people with significant control over a company) is referred to as the company's "PSC register".

(11) In deciding whether to specify a description of legal entity under paragraph (d) of subsection (7), the Secretary of State is to have regard to the extent to which entities of that description are bound by disclosure and transparency rules (in the United Kingdom or elsewhere) broadly similar to the ones applying to an entity falling within any other paragraph of that subsection.

(12) Subject to express provision in this Part and to any modification prescribed by regulations under this subsection, this Part is to be read and have effect as if each of the following were an individual, even if they are legal persons under the laws by which they are governed—

(a) a corporation sole,

(b) a government or government department of a country or territory or a part of a country or territory,

(c) an international organisation whose members include two or more countries or territories (or their governments),

(d) a local authority or local government body in the United Kingdom or elsewhere.

(13) Regulations under subsection (7)(d) are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(14) Subject to subsection (13), regulations under this section are subject to negative resolution procedure.

CHAPTER 2

INFORMATION-GATHERING

Duty on companies

790D Company's duty to investigate and obtain information

(1) A company to which this Part applies must take reasonable steps—
  (a) to find out if there is anyone who is a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, and
  (b) if so, to identify them.

(2) Without limiting subsection (1), a company to which this Part applies must give notice to anyone whom it knows or has reasonable cause to believe to be a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to it.

(3) The notice, if addressed to an individual, must require the addressee—
  (a) to state whether or not he or she is a registrable person in relation to the company (within the meaning of this Part), and
  (b) if so, to confirm or correct any particulars of his or hers that are included in the notice, and supply any that are missing.

(4) The notice, if addressed to a legal entity, must require the addressee—
  (a) to state whether or not it is a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company (within the meaning of this Part), and
  (b) if so, to confirm or correct any of its particulars that are included in the notice, and supply any that are missing.

(5) A company to which this Part applies may also give notice to a person under this section if it knows or has reasonable cause to believe that the person—
  (a) knows the identity of someone who falls within subsection (6), or
  (b) knows the identity of someone likely to have that knowledge.

(6) The persons who fall within this subsection are—
  (a) any registrable person in relation to the company;
  (b) any relevant legal entity in relation to the company;
  (c) any entity which would be a relevant legal entity in relation to the company but for the fact that section 790C(6)(b) does not apply in respect of it.

(7) A notice under subsection (5) may require the addressee—
  (a) to state whether or not the addressee knows the identity of—
    (i) any person who falls within subsection (6), or
    (ii) any person likely to have that knowledge, and
  (b) if so, to supply any particulars of theirs that are within the addressee's knowledge, and state whether or not the

particulars are being supplied with the knowledge of each of the persons concerned.

(8) A notice under this section must state that the addressee is to comply with the notice by no later than the end of the period of one month beginning with the date of the notice.

(9) The Secretary of State may by regulations make further provision about the giving of notices under this section, including the form and content of any such notices and the manner in which they must be given.

(10) Regulations under subsection (9) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

(11) A company is not required to take steps or give notice under this section with respect to a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity if—

(a) the company has already been informed of the person's status as a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity in relation to it, and been supplied with all the particulars, and

(b) in the case of a registrable person, the information and particulars were provided either by the person concerned or with his or her knowledge.

(12) A person to whom a notice under subsection (5) is given is not required by that notice to disclose any information in respect of which a claim to legal professional privilege (in Scotland, to confidentiality of communications) could be maintained in legal proceedings.

(13) In this section—

(a) a reference to knowing the identity of a person includes knowing information from which that person can be identified, and

(b) "particulars" means—

(i) in the case of a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity, the required particulars (see section 790K), and

(ii) in any other case, any particulars that will allow the person to be contacted by the company.

790E Company's duty to keep information up-to-date

(1) This section applies if particulars of a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity are stated in a company's PSC register.

(2) The company must give notice to the person or entity if the company knows or has reasonable cause to believe that a relevant change has occurred.

(3) In the case of a registrable person, a "relevant change" occurs if—

(a) the person ceases to be a registrable person in relation to the company, or

(b) any other change occurs as a result of which the particulars stated for the person in the PSC register are incorrect or incomplete.

(4) In the case of a registrable relevant legal entity, a "relevant change" occurs if—

(a) the entity ceases to be a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, or

(b) any other change occurs as a result of which the particulars stated for the entity in the PSC register are incorrect or incomplete.

(5) The company must give the notice as soon as reasonably practicable after it learns of the change or first has reasonable cause to believe that the change has occurred.

(6) The notice must require the addressee—

(a) to confirm whether or not the change has occurred, and

(b) if so—

(i) to state the date of the change, and

(ii) to confirm or correct the particulars included in the notice, and supply any that are missing from the notice.

(7) Subsections (8) to (10) of section 790D apply to notices under this section as to notices under that section.

(8) A company is not required to give notice under this section if—

(a) the company has already been informed of the relevant change, and

(b) in the case of a registrable person, that information was provided either by the person concerned or with his or her knowledge.

790F Failure by company to comply with information duties

(1) If a company fails to comply with a duty under section 790D or 790E to take steps or give notice, an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or a fine (or both);

(ii) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);

(iii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

Duty on others

790G Duty to supply information

(1) This section applies to a person if—
  (a) the person is a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to a company,
  (b) the person knows that to be the case or ought reasonably to do so,
  (c) the required particulars of the person are not stated in the company's PSC register,
  (d) the person has not received notice from the company under section 790D(2), and
  (e) the circumstances described in paragraphs (a) to (d) have continued for a period of at least one month.

(2) The person must—
  (a) notify the company of the person's status (as a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity) in relation to the company,
  (b) state the date, to the best of the person's knowledge, on which the person acquired that status, and
  (c) give the company the required particulars (see section 790K).

(3) The duty under subsection (2) must be complied with by the end of the period of one month beginning with the day on which all the conditions in subsection (1)(a) to (e) were first met with respect to the person.

790H Duty to update information

(1) This section applies to a person if—
  (a) the required particulars of the person (whether a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity) are stated in a company's PSC register,
  (b) a relevant change occurs,
  (c) the person knows of the change or ought reasonably to do so,
  (d) the company's PSC register has not been altered to reflect the change, and
  (e) the person has not received notice from the company under section 790E by the end of the period of one month beginning with the day on which the change occurred.

(2) The person must—
  (a) notify the company of the change,
  (b) state the date on which it occurred, and
  (c) give the company any information needed to update the PSC register.

(3) The duty under subsection (2) must be complied with by the later of—
  (a) the end of the period of 2 months beginning with the day on which the change occurred, and
  (b) the end of the period of one month beginning with the day on which the person discovered the change.

(4) "Relevant change" has the same meaning as in section 790E.

Compliance

790I Enforcement of disclosure requirements

Schedule 1B contains provisions for when a person (whether an individual or a legal entity) fails to comply with a notice under section 790D or 790E or a duty under section 790G or 790H.

Exemption from information and registration requirements

790J Power to make exemptions

(1) The Secretary of State may exempt a person (whether an individual or a legal entity) under this section.

(2) The effect of an exemption is—
  (a) the person is not required to comply with any notice under section 790D(2) or 790E (but if a notice is received, the person must bring the existence of the exemption to the attention of the company that sent it),
  (b) companies are not obliged to take steps or give notice under those sections to or with respect to that person,
  (c) notices under section 790D(5) do not require anyone else to give any information about that person,
  (d) the duties imposed by sections 790G and 790H do not apply to that person, and
  (e) the person does not count for the purposes of section 790M as a registrable person or, as the case may be, a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to any company.

(3) The Secretary of State must not grant an exemption under this section unless the Secretary of State is satisfied that, having regard to any undertaking given by the person to be exempted, there are special reasons why that person should be exempted.

Required particulars

790K Required particulars

(1) The "required particulars" of an individual who is a registrable person are—
  (a) name,
  (b) a service address,
  (c) the country or state (or part of the United Kingdom) in which the individual is usually resident,
  (d) nationality,
  (e) date of birth,
  (f) usual residential address,
  (g) the date on which the individual became a registrable person in relation to the company in question,
  (h) the nature of his or her control over that company (see Schedule 1A), and

(i) if, in relation to that company, restrictions on using or disclosing any of the individual's PSC particulars are in force under regulations under section 790ZG, that fact.

(2) In the case of a person in relation to which this Part has effect by virtue of section 790C(12) as if the person were an individual, the "required particulars" are—

(a) name,
(b) principal office,
(c) the legal form of the person and the law by which it is governed,
(d) the date on which it became a registrable person in relation to the company in question, and
(e) the nature of its control over the company (see Schedule 1A).

(3) The "required particulars" of a registrable relevant legal entity are—

(a) corporate or firm name,
(b) registered or principal office,
(c) the legal form of the entity and the law by which it is governed,
(d) if applicable, the register of companies in which it is entered (including details of the state) and its registration number in that register,
(e) the date on which it became a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company in question, and
(f) the nature of its control over that company (see Schedule 1A).

(4) Section 163(2) (particulars of directors to be registered: individuals) applies for the purposes of subsection (1).

(5) The Secretary of State may by regulations make further provision about the particulars required by subsections (1)(h), (2)(e) and (3)(f).

(6) Regulations under subsection (5) are subject to negative resolution procedure.

790L Required particulars: power to amend

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend section 790K so as to add to or remove from any of the lists of required particulars.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

CHAPTER 3

REGISTER OF PEOPLE WITH SIGNIFICANT CONTROL

790M Duty to keep register

(1) A company to which this Part applies must keep a register of people with significant control over the company.

(2) The required particulars of any individual with significant control over the company who is "registrable" in relation to the company

must be entered in the register once all the required particulars of that individual have been confirmed.

(3) The company must not enter any of the individual's particulars in the register until they have all been confirmed.

(4) Particulars of any individual with significant control over the company who is "non-registrable" in relation to the company must not be entered in the register.

(5) But the required particulars of any entity that is a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company must be noted in the register once the company becomes aware of the entity's status as such.

(6) If the company becomes aware of a relevant change (within the meaning of section 790E) with respect to a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity whose particulars are stated in the register—

(a) details of the change and the date on which it occurred must be entered in the register, but

(b) in the case of a registrable person, the details and date must not be entered there until they have all been confirmed.

(7) The Secretary of State may by regulations require additional matters to be noted in a company's PSC register.

(8) Regulations under subsection (7) are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(9) A person's required particulars, and the details and date of any relevant change with respect to a person, are considered for the purposes of this section to have been "confirmed" if—

(a) the person supplied or confirmed them to the company (whether voluntarily, pursuant to a duty imposed by this Part or otherwise),

(b) another person did so but with that person's knowledge, or

(c) they were included in a statement of initial significant control delivered to the registrar under section 9 by subscribers wishing to form the company.

(10) In the case of someone who was a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company on its incorporation—

(a) the date to be entered in the register as the date on which the individual became a registrable person, or the entity became a registrable relevant legal entity, is to be the date of incorporation, and

(b) in the case of a registrable person, that particular is deemed to have been "confirmed".

(11) For the purposes of this section—

(a) if a person's usual residential address is the same as his or her service address, the entry for him or her in the register may state that fact instead of repeating the address (but this does not apply in a case where the service address is stated to be "The company's registered office");

(b) nothing in section 126 (trusts not to be entered on register) affects what may be entered in a company's PSC register or is

receivable by the registrar in relation to people with significant control over a company (even if they are members of the company);

(c) see section 790J (exemptions) for cases where a person does not count as a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity.

(12) If a company makes default in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(13) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(14) A company to which this Part applies is not by virtue of anything done for the purposes of this section affected with notice of, or put upon inquiry as to, the rights of any person in relation to any shares or rights in or with respect to the company.

790N Register to be kept available for inspection

(1) A company's PSC register must be kept available for inspection—

(a) at its registered office, or

(b) at a place specified in regulations under section 1136.

(2) A company must give notice to the registrar of the place where its PSC register is kept available for inspection and of any change in that place.

(3) No such notice is required if the register has, at all times since it came into existence, been kept available for inspection at the company's registered office.

(4) If a company makes default for 14 days in complying with subsection (2), an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

790O Rights to inspect and require copies

(1) A company's PSC register must be open to the inspection of any person without charge.

(2) Any person may require a copy of a company's PSC register, or any part of it, on payment of such fee as may be prescribed.

(3) A person seeking to exercise either of the rights conferred by this section must make a request to the company to that effect.

(4) The request must contain the following information—

(a) in the case of an individual, his or her name and address,
(b) in the case of an organisation, the name and address of an individual responsible for making the request on behalf of the organisation, and
(c) the purpose for which the information is to be used.

790P PSC register: response to request for inspection or copy

(1) Where a company receives a request under section 790O, it must within 5 working days either—
(a) comply with the request, or
(b) apply to the court.

(2) If it applies to the court, it must notify the person making the request.

(3) If on an application under this section the court is satisfied that the inspection or copy is not sought for a proper purpose—
(a) it must direct the company not to comply with the request, and
(b) it may further order that the company's costs (in Scotland, expenses) on the application be paid in whole or in part by the person who made the request, even if that person is not a party to the application.

(4) If the court makes such a direction and it appears to the court that the company is or may be subject to other requests made for a similar purpose (whether made by the same person or different persons), it may direct that the company is not to comply with any such request.
The order must contain such provision as appears to the court appropriate to identify the requests to which it applies.

(5) If on an application under this section the court does not direct the company not to comply with the request, the company must comply with the request immediately upon the court giving its decision or, as the case may be, the proceedings being discontinued.

790Q PSC register: refusal of inspection or default in providing copy

(1) If an inspection required under section 790O is refused or default is made in providing a copy required under that section, otherwise than in accordance with an order of the court, an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(3) In the case of any such refusal or default the court may by order compel an immediate inspection or, as the case may be, direct that the copy required be sent to the person requesting it.

790R PSC register: offences in connection with request for or disclosure of information

(1) It is an offence for a person knowingly or recklessly to make in a request under section 790O a statement that is misleading, false or deceptive in a material particular.

(2) It is an offence for a person in possession of information obtained by exercise of either of the rights conferred by that section—
  (a) to do anything that results in the information being disclosed to another person, or
  (b) to fail to do anything with the result that the information is disclosed to another person,

knowing, or having reason to suspect, that person may use the information for a purpose that is not a proper purpose.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
  (a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);
  (b) on summary conviction—
    (i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine (or both);
    (ii) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);
    (iii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

790S Information as to state of register

(1) Where a person inspects the PSC register, or the company provides a person with a copy of the register or any part of it, the company must inform the person of the most recent date (if any) on which alterations were made to the register and whether there are further alterations to be made.

(2) If a company fails to provide the information required under subsection (1), an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

790T Protected information

(1) Section 790N and subsections (1) and (2) of section 790O are subject to—
  (a) section 790ZF (protection of information as to usual residential address), and
  (b) any provision of regulations made under section 790ZG (protection of material).

(2) Subsection (1) is not to be taken to affect the generality of the power conferred by virtue of section 790ZG(3)(f).

790U Removal of entries from the register

(1) An entry relating to an individual who used to be a registrable person may be removed from the company's PSC register after the expiration of 10 years from the date on which the individual ceased to be a registrable person in relation to the company.

(2) An entry relating to an entity that used to be a registrable relevant legal entity may be removed from the company's PSC register after the expiration of 10 years from the date on which the entity ceased to be a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company.

790V Power of court to rectify register

(1) If—
  (a) the name of any person is, without sufficient cause, entered in or omitted from a company's PSC register as a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity, or
  (b) default is made or unnecessary delay takes place in entering on the PSC register the fact that a person has ceased to be a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity,

the person aggrieved or any other interested party may apply to the court for rectification of the register.

(2) The court may either refuse the application or may order rectification of the register and payment by the company of any damages sustained by any party aggrieved.

(3) On such an application, the court may—
  (a) decide any question as to whether the name of any person who is a party to the application should or should not be entered in or omitted from the register, and
  (b) more generally, decide any question necessary or expedient to be decided for rectification of the register.

(4) In the case of a company required by this Act to send information stated in its PSC register to the registrar of companies, the court, when making an order for rectification of the register, must by its order direct notice of the rectification to be given to the registrar.

(5) The reference in this section to "any other interested party" is to—
  (a) any member of the company, and
  (b) any other person who is a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company.

CHAPTER 4

ALTERNATIVE METHOD OF RECORD-KEEPING

790W Introductory

(1) This Chapter sets out rules allowing private companies to keep information on the register kept by the registrar instead of entering it in their PSC register.

(2) The register kept by the registrar (see section 1080) is referred to in this Chapter as "the central register".

(3) Chapter 3 must be read with this Chapter.

(4) Nothing in this Chapter affects the duties imposed by Chapter 2.

(5) Where an election under section 790X is in force in respect of a company, references in Chapter 2 to the company's PSC register are to be read as references to the central register.

790X Right to make an election

(1) An election may be made under this section—
  (a) by the subscribers wishing to form a private company under this Act, or
  (b) by the private company itself once it is formed and registered.

(2) The election is of no effect unless—
  (a) notice of the intention to make the election was given to each eligible person at least 14 days before the day on which the election was made, and
  (b) no objection was received by the subscribers or, as the case may be, the company from any eligible person within that notice period.

(3) A person is an "eligible person" if—
  (a) in a case of an election by the subscribers wishing to form a private company, the person's particulars would, but for the election, be required to be entered in the company's PSC register on its incorporation, and
  (b) in the case of an election by the company itself—
    (i) the person is a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, and
    (ii) the person's particulars are stated in the company's PSC register.

(4) An election under this section is made by giving notice of election to the registrar.

(5) If the notice is given by subscribers wishing to form a private company—
  (a) it must be given when the documents required to be delivered under section 9 are delivered to the registrar, and
  (b) it must be accompanied by a statement confirming that no objection was received as mentioned in subsection (2).

(6) If the notice is given by the company, it must be accompanied by—
  (a) a statement confirming that no objection was received as mentioned in subsection (2), and
  (b) a statement containing all the information that is required to be contained in the company's PSC register as at the date of the notice in respect of matters that are current as at that date.

(7) The company must where necessary update the statement sent under subsection (6)(b) to ensure that the final version delivered to the registrar contains all the information that is required to be contained in the company's PSC register as at the time immediately

before the election takes effect (see section 790Y) in respect of matters that are current as at that time.

(8) The obligation in subsection (7) to update the statement includes an obligation to rectify it (where necessary) in consequence of the company's PSC register being rectified (whether before or after the election takes effect).

(9) If default is made in complying with subsection (7), an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(10) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(11) A reference in this Chapter to matters that are current as at a given date or time is a reference to—
  (a) persons who are a registrable person or registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company as at that date or time and whose particulars are required to be contained in the company's PSC register as at that date or time, and
  (b) any other matters that are current as at that date or time.

790Y Effective date of election

(1) An election made under section 790X takes effect when the notice of election is registered by the registrar.

(2) The election remains in force until either—
  (a) the company ceases to be a private company, or
  (b) a notice of withdrawal sent by the company under section 790ZD is registered by the registrar,

whichever occurs first.

790Z Effect of election on obligations under Chapter 3

(1) The effect of an election under section 790X on a company's obligations under Chapter 3 is as follows.

(2) The company's obligation to maintain a PSC register does not apply with respect to the period when the election is in force.

(3) This means that, during that period—
  (a) the company must continue to keep a PSC register in accordance with Chapter 3 (a "historic" register) containing all the information that was required to be stated in that register as at the time immediately before the election took effect, but
  (b) the company does not have to update that register to reflect any changes that occur after that time.

(4) The provisions of Chapter 3 (including the rights to inspect or require copies of the PSC register) continue to apply to the historic register during the period when the election is in force.

(5) The company must place a note in its historic register—
  (a) stating that an election under section 790X is in force,
  (b) recording when that election took effect, and
  (c) indicating that up-to-date information about people with significant control over the company is available for public inspection on the central register.

(6) Subsections (12) and (13) of section 790M apply if a company makes default in complying with subsection (5) as they apply if a company makes default in complying with that section.

(7) The obligations under this section with respect to a historic register do not apply in a case where the election was made by subscribers wishing to form a private company.

790ZA Duty to notify registrar of changes

(1) The duty under subsection (2) applies during the period when an election under section 790X is in force.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar any information that the company would during that period have been obliged under Chapter 3 to enter in its PSC register, had the election not been in force.

(3) The information must be delivered as soon as reasonably practicable after the company becomes aware of it and, in any event, no later than the time by which the company would have been required to enter the information in its PSC register.

(4) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

  For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

790ZB Information as to state of central register

(1) When a person inspects or requests a copy of material on the central register relating to a company in respect of which an election under section 790X is in force, the person may ask the company to confirm that all information that the company is required to deliver to the registrar under this Chapter has been delivered.

(2) If a company fails to respond to a request under subsection (1), an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

790ZC Power of court to order company to remedy default or delay

(1) This section applies if—
  (a) the name of a person is without sufficient cause included in, or omitted from, information that a company delivers to the registrar under this Chapter concerning persons who are a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, or
  (b) default is made or unnecessary delay takes place in informing the registrar under this Chapter that a person—
    (i) has become a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, or
    (ii) has ceased to be a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to it.

(2) The person aggrieved, or any other interested party, may apply to the court for an order requiring the company to deliver to the registrar the information (or statements) necessary to rectify the position.

(3) The court may either refuse the application or may make the order and order the company to pay any damages sustained by any party aggrieved.

(4) On such an application the court may decide—
  (a) any question as to whether the name of any person who is a party to the application should or should not be included in or omitted from information delivered to the registrar under this Chapter about persons who are a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company, and
  (b) any question necessary or expedient to be decided for rectifying the position.

(5) Nothing in this section affects a person's rights under section 1095 or 1096 (rectification of register on application to registrar or under court order).

(6) The reference in this section to "any other interested party" is to—
  (a) any member of the company, and
  (b) any other person who is a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company.

790ZD Withdrawing the election

(1) A company may withdraw an election made by or in respect of it under section 790X.

(2) Withdrawal is achieved by giving notice of withdrawal to the registrar.

(3) The withdrawal takes effect when the notice is registered by the registrar.

(4) The effect of withdrawal is that the company's obligation under Chapter 3 to maintain a PSC register applies from then on with respect to the period going forward.

(5) This means that, when the withdrawal takes effect—
  (a) the company must enter in its PSC register all the information that is required to be contained in that register in respect of matters that are current as at that time,
  (b) the company must also retain in its register all the information that it was required under section 790Z(3)(a) to keep in a historic register while the election was in force, but
  (c) the company is not required to enter in its register information relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current.

(6) The company must place a note in its PSC register—
  (a) stating that the election under section 790X has been withdrawn,
  (b) recording when that withdrawal took effect, and
  (c) indicating that information about people with significant control over the company relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current is available for public inspection on the central register.

(7) Subsections (12) and (13) of section 790M apply if a company makes default in complying with subsection (6) as they apply if a company makes default in complying with that section.

790ZE Power to extend option to public companies

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this Act—
  (a) to extend this Chapter (with or without modification) to public companies or public companies of a class specified in the regulations, and
  (b) to make such other amendments as the Secretary of State thinks fit in consequence of that extension.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

CHAPTER 5

PROTECTION FROM DISCLOSURE

790ZF Protection of information as to usual residential address

(1) The provisions of sections 240 to 244 (directors' residential addresses: protection from disclosure) apply to information within subsection (2) as to protected information within the meaning of those sections.

(2) The information within this subsection is—
  (a) information as to the usual residential address of a person with significant control over a company, and
  (b) the information that such a person's service address is his or her usual residential address.

(3) Subsection (1) does not apply to information relating to a person if an application under regulations made under section 790ZG has been granted with respect to that information and not been revoked.

790ZG Power to make regulations protecting material

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision requiring the registrar and the company to refrain from using or disclosing PSC particulars of a prescribed kind (or to refrain from doing so except in prescribed circumstances) where an application is made to the registrar requesting them to refrain from so doing.

(2) "PSC particulars" are particulars of a person with significant control over the company—
  (a) including a person who used to be such a person, but
  (b) excluding any person in relation to which this Part has effect by virtue of section 790C(12) as if the person were an individual.

(3) Regulations under this section may make provision as to—
  (a) who may make an application,
  (b) the grounds on which an application may be made,
  (c) the information to be included in and documents to accompany an application,
  (d) how an application is to be determined,
  (e) the duration of and procedures for revoking the restrictions on use and disclosure,
  (f) the operation of sections 790N to 790S in cases where an application is made, and
  (g) the charging of fees by the registrar for disclosing PSC particulars where the regulations permit disclosure, by way of exception, in prescribed circumstances.

(4) Provision under subsection (3)(d) and (e) may in particular—
  (a) confer a discretion on the registrar;
  (b) provide for a question to be referred to a person other than the registrar for the purposes of determining the application or revoking the restrictions.

(5) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

(6) Nothing in this section or in regulations made under it affects the use or disclosure of particulars of a person in any other capacity (for example, the use or disclosure of particulars of a person in that person's capacity as a member or director of the company)."

2 After Schedule 1 to that Act insert—

"SCHEDULE 1A Section 790C

REFERENCES TO PEOPLE WITH SIGNIFICANT CONTROL OVER A COMPANY

PART 1

THE SPECIFIED CONDITIONS

Introduction

1 This Part of this Schedule specifies the conditions at least one of which must be met by an individual ("X") in relation to a company ("company Y") in order for the individual to be a person with "significant control" over the company.

Ownership of shares

2 The first condition is that X holds, directly or indirectly, more than 25% of the shares in company Y.

Ownership of voting rights

3 The second condition is that X holds, directly or indirectly, more than 25% of the voting rights in company Y.

Ownership of right to appoint or remove directors

4 The third condition is that X holds the right, directly or indirectly, to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors of company Y.

Significant influence or control

5 The fourth condition is that X has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, significant influence or control over company Y.

Trusts, partnerships etc

6 The fifth condition is that—

(a) the trustees of a trust or the members of a firm that, under the law by which it is governed, is not a legal person meet any of the other specified conditions (in their capacity as such) in relation to company Y, or would do so if they were individuals, and

(b) X has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, significant influence or control over the activities of that trust or firm.

PART 2

HOLDING AN INTEREST IN A COMPANY ETC

Introduction

7 This Part of this Schedule specifies the circumstances in which, for the purposes of section 790C(4) or (8)—

(a) a person ("V") is to be regarded as holding an interest in a company ("company W");

(b) an interest held by V in company W is to be regarded as held through a legal entity.

Holding an interest

8 (1) V holds an interest in company W if—

(a) V holds shares in company W, directly or indirectly,

(b) V holds, directly or indirectly, voting rights in company W,

(c) V holds, directly or indirectly, the right to appoint or remove any member of the board of directors of company W,

(d) V has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, significant influence or control over company W, or

(e) sub-paragraph (2) is satisfied.

(2) This sub-paragraph is satisfied where—

(a) the trustees of a trust or the members of a firm that, under the law by which it is governed, is not a legal person hold an interest in company W in a way mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(a) to (d), and

(b) V has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, significant influence or control over the activities of that trust or firm.

Interests held through a legal entity

9 (1) This paragraph applies where V—

(a) holds an interest in company W by virtue of indirectly holding shares or a right, and

(b) does so by virtue of having a majority stake (see paragraph 18) in—

(i) a legal entity ("L") which holds the shares or right directly, or

(ii) a legal entity that is part of a chain of legal entities such as is described in paragraph 18(1)(b) or (2)(b) that includes L.

(2) Where this paragraph applies, V holds the interest in company W—

(a) through L, and

(b) through each other legal entity in the chain mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b)(ii).

PART 3

SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISION

Introduction

10 This Part sets out rules for the interpretation of this Schedule.

Joint interests

11 If two or more persons each hold a share or right jointly, each of them is treated for the purposes of this Schedule as holding that share or right.

Joint arrangements

12 (1) If shares or rights held by a person and shares or rights held by another person are the subject of a joint arrangement between those persons, each of them is treated for the purposes of this Schedule as holding the combined shares or rights of both of them.

(2) A "joint arrangement" is an arrangement between the holders of shares (or rights) that they will exercise all or substantially all the rights conferred by their respective shares (or rights) jointly in a way that is pre-determined by the arrangement.

(3) "Arrangement" has the meaning given by paragraph 21.

Calculating shareholdings

13 (1) In relation to a legal entity that has a share capital, a reference to holding "more than 25% of the shares" in that entity is to holding shares comprised in the issued share capital of that entity of a nominal value exceeding (in aggregate) 25% of that share capital.

(2) In relation to a legal entity that does not have a share capital—

(a) a reference to holding shares in that entity is to holding a right to share in the capital or, as the case may be, profits of that entity;

(b) a reference to holding "more than 25% of the shares" in that entity is to holding a right or rights to share in more than 25% of the capital or, as the case may be, profits of that entity.

Voting rights

14 (1) A reference to the voting rights in a legal entity is to the rights conferred on shareholders in respect of their shares (or, in the case of an entity not having a share capital, on members) to vote at general meetings of the entity on all or substantially all matters.

(2) In relation to a legal entity that does not have general meetings at which matters are decided by the exercise of voting rights—

(a) a reference to exercising voting rights in the entity is to be read as a reference to exercising rights in relation to the

entity that are equivalent to those of a person entitled to exercise voting rights in a company;

(b) a reference to exercising more than 25% of the voting rights in the entity is to be read as a reference to exercising the right under the constitution of the entity to block changes to the overall policy of the entity or to the terms of its constitution.

15 In applying this Schedule, the voting rights in a legal entity are to be reduced by any rights held by the entity itself.

Rights to appoint or remove members of the board

16 A reference to the right to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors of a legal entity is to the right to appoint or remove directors holding a majority of the voting rights at meetings of the board on all or substantially all matters.

17 References to a board of directors, in the case of an entity that does not have such a board, are to be read as references to the equivalent management body of that entity.

Shares or rights held "indirectly"

18 (1) A person holds a share "indirectly" if the person has a majority stake in a legal entity and that entity—

(a) holds the share in question, or

(b) is part of a chain of legal entities—

(i) each of which (other than the last) has a majority stake in the entity immediately below it in the chain, and

(ii) the last of which holds the share.

(2) A person holds a right "indirectly" if the person has a majority stake in a legal entity and that entity—

(a) holds that right, or

(b) is part of a chain of legal entities—

(i) each of which (other than the last) has a majority stake in the entity immediately below it in the chain, and

(ii) the last of which holds that right.

(3) For these purposes, A has a "majority stake" in B if—

(a) A holds a majority of the voting rights in B,

(b) A is a member of B and has the right to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors of B,

(c) A is a member of B and controls alone, pursuant to an agreement with other shareholders or members, a majority of the voting rights in B, or

(d) A has the right to exercise, or actually exercises, dominant influence or control over B.

(4) In the application of this paragraph to the right to appoint or remove a majority of the board of directors, a legal entity is to be treated as having the right to appoint a director if—

(a) a person's appointment as director follows necessarily from that person's appointment as director of the legal entity, or
(b) the directorship is held by the legal entity itself.

Shares held by nominees

19 A share held by a person as nominee for another is to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as held by the other (and not by the nominee).

Rights treated as held by person who controls their exercise

20 (1) Where a person controls a right, the right is to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as held by that person (and not by the person who in fact holds the right, unless that person also controls it).

(2) A person "controls" a right if, by virtue of any arrangement between that person and others, the right is exercisable only—
(a) by that person,
(b) in accordance with that person's directions or instructions, or
(c) with that person's consent or concurrence.

21 (1) "Arrangement" includes—
(a) any scheme, agreement or understanding, whether or not it is legally enforceable, and
(b) any convention, custom or practice of any kind.

(2) But something does not count as an arrangement unless there is at least some degree of stability about it (whether by its nature or terms, the time it has been in existence or otherwise).

Rights exercisable only in certain circumstances etc

22 (1) Rights that are exercisable only in certain circumstances are to be taken into account only—
(a) when the circumstances have arisen, and for so long as they continue to obtain, or
(b) when the circumstances are within the control of the person having the rights.

(2) But rights that are exercisable by an administrator or by creditors while a legal entity is in relevant insolvency proceedings are not to be taken into account even while the entity is in those proceedings.

(3) "Relevant insolvency proceedings" means—
(a) administration within the meaning of the Insolvency Act 1986,
(b) administration within the meaning of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 (S.I. 1989/2405 (N.I. 19)), or
(c) proceedings under the insolvency law of another country or territory during which an entity's assets and affairs are

subject to the control or supervision of a third party or creditor.

(4) Rights that are normally exercisable but are temporarily incapable of exercise are to continue to be taken into account.

Rights attached to shares held by way of security

23 Rights attached to shares held by way of security provided by a person are to be treated for the purposes of this Schedule as held by that person—

(a) where apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in accordance with that person's instructions, and

(b) where the shares are held in connection with the granting of loans as part of normal business activities and apart from the right to exercise them for the purpose of preserving the value of the security, or of realising it, the rights are exercisable only in that person's interests.

Significant influence or control

24 (1) The Secretary of State must issue guidance about the meaning of "significant influence or control" for the purposes of this Schedule.

(2) Regard must be had to that guidance in interpreting references in this Schedule to "significant influence or control".

(3) Before issuing guidance under this paragraph the Secretary of State must lay a draft of it before Parliament.

(4) If, within the 40-day period, either House of Parliament resolves not to approve the draft guidance, the Secretary of State must take no further steps in relation to it.

(5) If no such resolution is made within that period, the Secretary of State must issue and publish the guidance in the form of the draft.

(6) Sub-paragraph (4) does not prevent a new draft of proposed guidance from being laid before Parliament.

(7) In this section "the 40-day period", in relation to draft guidance, means the period of 40 days beginning with the day on which the draft is laid before Parliament (or, if it is not laid before each House on the same day, the later of the days on which it is laid).

(8) In calculating the 40-day period, no account is to be taken of any period during which—

(a) Parliament is dissolved or prorogued, or

(b) both Houses are adjourned for more than 4 days.

(9) The Secretary of State may revise guidance issued under this paragraph, and a reference in this paragraph to guidance includes a reference to revised guidance.

Limited partnerships

25 (1) An individual does not meet the specified condition in paragraph 2, 3 or 4 in relation to a company by virtue only of being a limited partner.

(2) An individual does not meet the specified condition in paragraph 2, 3 or 4 in relation to a company by virtue only of, directly or indirectly—

(a) holding shares, or

(b) holding a right,

in or in relation to a limited partner which (in its capacity as such) would meet the condition if it were an individual.

(3) Sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) do not apply for the purposes of determining whether the requirement set out in paragraph (a) of the specified condition in paragraph 6 is met.

(4) In this paragraph "limited partner" means—

(a) a limited partner in a limited partnership registered under the Limited Partnerships Act 1907 (other than one who takes part in the management of the partnership business), or

(b) a foreign limited partner.

(5) In this paragraph "foreign limited partner" means an individual who—

(a) participates in arrangements established under the law of a country or territory outside the United Kingdom, and

(b) has the characteristics prescribed by regulations made by the Secretary of State.

(6) Regulations under this paragraph may, in particular, prescribe characteristics by reference to—

(a) the nature of arrangements;

(b) the nature of an individual's participation in the arrangements.

(7) Regulations under this paragraph are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

PART 4

POWER TO AMEND THRESHOLDS ETC

26 (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this Schedule for a permitted purpose.

(2) The permitted purposes are—

(a) to replace any or all references in this Schedule to a percentage figure with references to some other (larger or smaller) percentage figure;

(b) to change or supplement the specified conditions in Part 1 of this Schedule so as to include circumstances (for example, circumstances involving more complex structures) that give individuals a level of control over

company Y broadly similar to the level of control given by the other specified conditions;

(c) in consequence of any provision made by virtue of paragraph (b), to change or supplement Part 2 of this Schedule so that circumstances specified in that Part in which a person is to be regarded as holding an interest in a company correspond to any of the specified conditions, or would do so but for the extent of the interest.

(3) Regulations under this paragraph are subject to affirmative resolution procedure.

SCHEDULE 1B

Section 790I

ENFORCEMENT OF DISCLOSURE REQUIREMENTS

Right to issue restrictions notice

1 (1) This paragraph applies if—

(a) a notice under section 790D or 790E is served by a company on a person who has a relevant interest in the company, and

(b) the person fails to comply with that notice within the time specified in it.

(2) The company may give the person a notice under this paragraph (a "warning notice") informing the person that it is proposing to issue the person with a notice (a "restrictions notice") with respect to the relevant interest.

(3) The company may issue the restrictions notice if, by the end of the period of one month beginning with the date on which the warning notice was given—

(a) the person has not complied with the notice served under section 790D or 790E, and

(b) the company has not been provided with a valid reason sufficient to justify the person's failure to comply with the notice served under that section.

(4) A restrictions notice is issued on a person by sending the notice to the person.

(5) The effect of a restrictions notice is set out in paragraph 3.

(6) In deciding whether to issue a restrictions notice, the company must have regard to the effect of the notice on the rights of third parties in respect of the relevant interest.

Relevant interests

2 (1) For the purposes of this Schedule, a person has a relevant interest in a company if the person—

(a) holds any shares in the company,

(b) holds any voting rights in the company, or

(c) holds the right to appoint or remove any member of the board of directors of the company.

(2) References to "the relevant interest" are to the shares or right in question.

(3) Part 3 of Schedule 1A applies for the interpretation of sub-paragraph (1) save that, where the relevant interest is by virtue of paragraph 19 or 20 of that Schedule treated for the purposes of that Schedule as held by a person other than the person who in fact holds the interest, both the holder and the other person are to be regarded for the purposes of this Schedule as having the relevant interest.

Effect of restrictions notice

3 (1) The effect of a restrictions notice issued under paragraph 1 with respect to a relevant interest is as follows—

(a) any transfer of the interest is void,

(b) no rights are exercisable in respect of the interest,

(c) no shares may be issued in right of the interest or in pursuance of an offer made to the interest-holder,

(d) except in a liquidation, no payment may be made of sums due from the company in respect of the interest, whether in respect of capital or otherwise.

(2) An agreement to transfer an interest that is subject to the restriction in sub-paragraph (1)(a) is void.

(3) Sub-paragraph (2) does not apply to an agreement to transfer the interest on the making of an order under paragraph 8 made by virtue of sub-paragraph (3)(b) of that paragraph (removal of restrictions in case of court-approved transfer).

(4) An agreement to transfer any associated right (otherwise than in a liquidation) is void.

(5) Sub-paragraph (4) does not apply to an agreement to transfer any such right on the making of an order under paragraph 8 made by virtue of sub-paragraph (3)(b) of that paragraph (removal of restrictions in case of court-approved transfer).

(6) An "associated right", in relation to a relevant interest, is—

(a) a right to be issued with any shares issued in right of the relevant interest, or

(b) a right to receive payment of any sums due from the company in respect of the relevant interest.

(7) The provisions of this section are subject to any directions given under paragraph 4.

Protection of third party rights

4 (1) The court may give a direction under this paragraph if, on application by any person aggrieved, the court is satisfied that a restrictions notice issued by the company under paragraph 1 unfairly affects the rights of third parties in respect of the relevant interest.

(2) The direction is given for the purpose of protecting those third party rights.

(3) The direction is a direction that certain acts will not constitute a breach of the restrictions placed on the relevant interest by the restrictions notice.

(4) An order containing a direction under this paragraph—
  (a) must specify the acts that will not constitute a breach of the restrictions, and
  (b) may confine the direction to cases where those acts are done by persons, or for purposes, described in the order.

(5) The direction may be given subject to such terms as the court thinks fit.

Breach of restrictions

5 (1) A person commits an offence if the person does anything listed in sub-paragraph (2) knowing that the interest is subject to restrictions.

(2) The things are—
  (a) exercising or purporting to exercise any right to dispose of a relevant interest,
  (b) exercising or purporting to exercise any right to dispose of any right to be issued with a relevant interest, or
  (c) voting in respect of a relevant interest (whether as holder of the interest or as proxy) or appointing a proxy to vote in respect of a relevant interest.

(3) A person who has a relevant interest that the person knows to be subject to restrictions commits an offence if the person—
  (a) knows a person to be entitled (apart from the restrictions) to vote in respect of the interest, whether as holder or as proxy,
  (b) does not know the person to be aware of the fact that the interest is subject to restrictions, and
  (c) fails to notify the person of that fact.

(4) A person commits an offence if the person—
  (a) either has a relevant interest that the person knows to be subject to restrictions or is entitled to an associated right, and
  (b) enters in that capacity into an agreement that is void by virtue of paragraph 3(2) or (4).

(5) References in this Schedule to an interest being "subject to restrictions" are to an interest being subject to restrictions by virtue of a restrictions notice under paragraph 1.

6 If shares in a company are issued in contravention of a restriction imposed by virtue of a restrictions notice under paragraph 1, an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

7 (1) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph 5 or 6 is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to a fine,
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.

(2) The provisions of those paragraphs are subject to any direction given under paragraph 4 or 8.

Relaxation of restrictions

8 (1) An application may be made to the court for an order directing that the relevant interest cease to be subject to restrictions.

(2) An application for an order under this paragraph may be made by the company in question or by any person aggrieved.

(3) The court must not make an order under this paragraph unless—
(a) it is satisfied that the information required by the notice served under section 790D or 790E has been disclosed to the company and no unfair advantage has accrued to any person as a result of the earlier failure to make that disclosure, or
(b) the relevant interest is to be transferred for valuable consideration and the court approves the transfer.

(4) An order under this paragraph made by virtue of sub-paragraph (3)(b) may continue, in whole or in part, the restrictions mentioned in paragraph 3(1)(c) and (d) so far as they relate to a right acquired or offer made before the transfer.

(5) Where any restrictions continue in force under sub-paragraph (4)—
(a) an application may be made under this paragraph for an order directing that the relevant interest cease to be subject to those restrictions, and
(b) sub-paragraph (3) does not apply in relation to the making of such an order.

Orders for sale

9 (1) The court may order that the relevant interest subject to restrictions be sold subject to the court's approval as to the sale.

(2) An application for an order under sub-paragraph (1) may only be made by the company in question.

(3) If the court makes an order under this paragraph, it may make such further order relating to the sale or transfer of the interest as it thinks fit.

(4) An application for an order under sub-paragraph (3) may be made—
(a) by the company in question,

(b) by the person appointed by or in pursuance of the order to effect the sale, or

(c) by any person with an interest in the relevant interest.

(5) On making an order under sub-paragraph (1) or (3), the court may order that the applicant's costs (in Scotland, expenses) be paid out of the proceeds of sale.

10 (1) If a relevant interest is sold in pursuance of an order under paragraph 9, the proceeds of the sale, less the costs of the sale, must be paid into court for the benefit of those who are beneficially interested in the relevant interest.

(2) A person who is beneficially interested in the relevant interest may apply to the court for the whole or part of those proceeds to be paid to that person.

(3) On such an application, the court must order the payment to the applicant of—

(a) the whole of the proceeds of sale together with any interest on the proceeds, or

(b) if another person was also beneficially interested in the relevant interest at the time of the sale, such proportion of the proceeds (and any interest) as the value of the applicant's interest bears to the total value of the relevant interest.

(4) If the court has ordered under paragraph 9 that the costs (in Scotland, expenses) of an applicant under that paragraph are to be paid out of the proceeds of sale, the applicant is entitled to payment of those costs (or expenses) out of the proceeds before any person receives any part of the proceeds under this paragraph.

Company's power to withdraw restrictions notice

11 A company that issues a person with a restrictions notice under paragraph 1 must by notice withdraw the restrictions notice if—

(a) it is satisfied that there is a valid reason sufficient to justify the person's failure to comply with the notice served under section 790D or 790E,

(b) the notice served under section 790D or 790E is complied with, or

(c) it discovers that the rights of a third party in respect of the relevant interest are being unfairly affected by the restrictions notice.

Supplementary provision

12 (1) The Secretary of State may by regulations make provision about the procedure to be followed by companies in issuing and withdrawing restrictions notices.

(2) The regulations may in particular make provision about—

(a) the form and content of warning notices and restrictions notices, and the manner in which they must be given,

(b) the factors to be taken into account in deciding what counts as a "valid reason" sufficient to justify a person's failure to comply with a notice under section 790D or 790E, and

(c) the effect of withdrawing a restrictions notice on matters that are pending with respect to the relevant interest when the notice is withdrawn.

(3) Regulations under this paragraph are subject to negative resolution procedure.

Offences for failing to comply with notices

13 (1) A person to whom a notice under section 790D or 790E is addressed commits an offence if the person—

(a) fails to comply with the notice, or

(b) in purported compliance with the notice—

(i) makes a statement that the person knows to be false in a material particular, or

(ii) recklessly makes a statement that is false in a material particular.

(2) Where the person is a legal entity, an offence is also committed by every officer of the entity who is in default.

(3) A person does not commit an offence under sub-paragraph (1)(a) (or sub-paragraph (2) as it applies in relation to that sub-paragraph) if the person proves that the requirement to give information was frivolous or vexatious.

(4) A person guilty of an offence under this paragraph is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine (or both);

(ii) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);

(iii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both).

Offences for failing to provide information

14 (1) A person commits an offence if the person—

(a) fails to comply with a duty under section 790G or 790H, or

(b) in purported compliance with such a duty—

(i) makes a statement that the person knows to be false in a material particular, or

(ii) recklessly makes a statement that is false in a material particular.

(2) Where the person is a legal entity, an offence is also committed by every officer of the entity who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this paragraph is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding two years or a fine (or both);

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine (or both);

(ii) in Scotland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding twelve months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both);

(iii) in Northern Ireland, to imprisonment for a term not exceeding six months or to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum (or both)."

PART 2

RELATED AMENDMENTS

3 The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

4 In section 9 (registration documents), in subsection (4), at the end of paragraph (c) insert ";

(d) a statement of initial significant control (see section 12A)."

5 After section 12 insert—

"12A Statement of initial significant control

(1) The statement of initial significant control required to be delivered to the registrar must—

(a) state whether, on incorporation, there will be anyone who will count for the purposes of section 790M (register of people with significant control over a company) as either a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company,

(b) include the required particulars of anyone who will count as such, and

(c) include any other matters that on incorporation will be required (or, in the absence of an election under section 790X, would be required) to be entered in the company's PSC register by virtue of section 790M.

(2) It is not necessary to include under subsection (1)(b) the date on which someone becomes a registrable person or a registrable relevant legal entity in relation to the company.

(3) If the statement includes required particulars of an individual, it must also contain a statement that those particulars are included with the knowledge of that individual.

(4) "Registrable person", "registrable relevant legal entity" and "required particulars" have the meanings given in Part 21A (see sections 790C and 790K)."

6 In section 120 (information as to state of register and index), in subsection (1), for "there were no" substitute "whether there are".

7 In section 1068 (registrar's requirements as to form, authentication and manner of delivery), in subsection (6A) (inserted by Schedule 5 to this Act), after "central register)" insert "or Chapter 4 of Part 21A (option to keep PSC information on central register)".

8 In section 1087 (material not available for public inspection), in subsection (1), after paragraph (ba) insert—

"(bb) information to which sections 240 to 244 are applied by section 790ZF(1) (residential addresses of people with significant control over the company) or any corresponding provision of regulations under section 1046 (overseas companies);

(bc) information that, by virtue of regulations under section 790ZG or any corresponding provision of regulations under section 1046, the registrar must omit from the material on the register that is available for inspection;".

9 (1) Section 1126 (consents required for certain prosecutions) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), at the end insert—

"section 1112 of this Act (general false statement offence);

paragraph 5 or 6 of Schedule 1B to this Act (breach of certain restrictions imposed under that Schedule)".

(3) In subsection (2)(a)—

(a) omit the "or" at the end of sub-paragraph (ii), and

(b) after sub-paragraph (iii) insert "or

(iv) section 1112 of this Act,".

(4) In subsection (2)(b), after "section 798 of" insert ", or paragraph 5 or 6 of Schedule 1B to,".

(5) In subsection (3)(a)—

(a) omit the "or" at the end of sub-paragraph (ii), and

(b) after sub-paragraph (iii) insert "or

(iv) section 1112 of this Act,".

(6) In subsection (3)(b), after "section 798 of" insert ", or paragraph 5 or 6 of Schedule 1B to,".

10 In section 1136 (regulations about where certain company records to be kept available for inspection), in subsection (2), after the entry for section 743 insert—

"section 790M (register of people with significant control over a company);

section 790Z (historic PSC register);".

11 In Schedule 8 (index of defined expressions), in the appropriate places insert—

"legal entity (in Part 21A)	section 790C(5)",

"PSC register	section 790C(10)",
"registrable person (in Part 21A)	section 790C(4)",
"registrable relevant legal entity (in Part 21A)	section 790C(8)",
"relevant legal entity (in Part 21A)	section 790C(6)",
"significant control (in Part 21A)	section 790C(2)".

SCHEDULE 4

Section 84

ABOLITION OF SHARE WARRANTS TO BEARER

PART 1

ARRANGEMENTS FOR CONVERSION AND CANCELLATION OF EXISTING SHARE WARRANTS

Right of surrender during surrender period

1 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a company which has issued a share warrant which has not been surrendered for cancellation before the day on which section 84 comes into force (the "commencement date").

(2) During the period of 9 months beginning with the commencement date (the "surrender period") the bearer of the share warrant has a right of surrender in relation to the warrant.

(3) For the purposes of this Schedule, if the bearer of a share warrant has a right of surrender in relation to the warrant, the bearer is entitled on surrendering the warrant for cancellation—

(a) to have the bearer's name entered as a member in the register of members of the company concerned, or

(b) where an election is in force under section 128B of the Companies Act 2006 (option to keep membership information on central register) in respect of the company, to have the bearer's name and other particulars delivered to the registrar, and the document containing that information registered by the registrar and the date recorded, as if the information were information required to be delivered under section 128E of that Act.

(4) A company must, as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event before the end of the period of 2 months beginning with the day on which a share warrant is surrendered for cancellation pursuant to a right of surrender, complete and have ready for delivery the certificates of the shares specified in the warrant.

(5) If a company fails to comply with sub-paragraph (4) an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

2 (1) A company must, as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event before the end of the period of 1 month beginning with the commencement date, give notice to the bearer of a share warrant issued by the company of—
(a) the bearer's right of surrender,
(b) the consequences of not exercising that right before the end of the period of 7 months beginning with the commencement date (see paragraph 3),
(c) the fact that the right will cease to be exercisable at the end of the surrender period, and
(d) the consequences of not exercising the right before the end of that period (see in particular paragraphs 5, 6 and 9 to 12).

(2) If a company fails to comply with this paragraph an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

Consequences of failure to surrender during first 7 months of surrender period

3 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a share warrant of a company which has not been surrendered by the bearer for cancellation before the end of the period of 7 months beginning with the commencement date.

(2) Any transfer of, or agreement to transfer, the share warrant made after the end of that period is void.

(3) With effect from the end of that period, all rights which are attached to the shares specified in the warrant are suspended (including any voting rights and any right to receive a dividend or other distribution).

(4) The company must pay into a separate bank account that complies with sub-paragraph (5) any dividend or other distribution which the bearer of the share warrant would, but for the suspension, have been entitled to receive.

(5) A bank account complies with this sub-paragraph if the balance of the account—
(a) bears interest at an appropriate rate, and
(b) can be withdrawn by such notice (if any) as is appropriate.

(6) If the share warrant is subsequently surrendered in accordance with this Schedule—
(a) the suspension ceases to have effect on surrender, and
(b) the suspension period amount must be paid to the bearer by the company.

(7) The "suspension period amount", in relation to a share warrant, is—
(a) the aggregate amount of any dividends or other distributions which the bearer of the warrant would, but for the suspension, have been entitled to receive, plus
(b) any interest accrued on that amount.

Second notice of right to surrender

4 (1) A company must, before the end of the period of 8 months beginning with the commencement date, give further notice to the bearer of a share warrant of the company of—
(a) the bearer's right of surrender,

(b) the consequences of not having exercised the right of surrender before the end of the period of 7 months beginning with the commencement date (see paragraph 3), and

(c) the matters referred to in paragraph 2(1)(c) and (d).

(2) If a company fails to comply with this paragraph an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

Expiry of right to surrender and applications for cancellation of outstanding share warrants

5 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a company which has issued a share warrant which has not been surrendered for cancellation before the end of the surrender period.

(2) The company must, as soon as reasonably practicable and in any event before the end of the period of 3 months beginning with the day after the end of the surrender period, apply to the court for an order (referred to in this Schedule as a "cancellation order") cancelling with effect from the date of the order—

(a) the share warrant, and

(b) the shares specified in it.

(3) The company must give notice to the bearer of the share warrant of the fact that an application has been made under this paragraph before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which it is made; and the notice must include a copy of the application.

(4) If a company fails to comply with sub-paragraph (2) or (3) an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) A company must, on making an application for a cancellation order, immediately give notice to the registrar.

(6) If a company fails to comply with sub-paragraph (5) an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

Cancellation orders and suspended cancellation orders

6 (1) The court must make a cancellation order in respect of a share warrant if, on an application under paragraph 5, it is satisfied that—

(a) the company has given notice to the bearer of the share warrant as required by paragraphs 2 and 4, or

(b) the bearer had actual notice by other means of the matters mentioned in paragraph 2(1).

(2) If, on such an application, the court is not so satisfied, it must instead make a suspended cancellation order in respect of the share warrant.

(3) A "suspended cancellation order" is an order—

(a) requiring the company to give notice to the bearer of the share warrant containing the information set out in sub-paragraph (4) before the end of the period of 5 working days beginning with the day the order is made,

(b) providing that the bearer of the share warrant has a right of surrender during the period of 2 months beginning with the day the order is made (referred to in this Schedule as "the grace period"), and

(c) if the share warrant is not so surrendered, cancelling it and the shares specified in it with effect from the end of the grace period.

(4) A notice required to be given by a suspended cancellation order must—

(a) inform the bearer of the share warrant of the fact that the bearer has a right of surrender during the grace period,

(b) inform the bearer of the consequences of not having exercised that right before the end of the period of 7 months beginning with the commencement date (see paragraph 3), and

(c) explain that the share warrant will be cancelled with effect from the end of the grace period if it is not surrendered before then.

(5) Where a share warrant is cancelled by an order under this paragraph, the company concerned must, as soon as reasonably practicable—

(a) enter the cancellation date in its register of members, or

(b) where an election is in force under section 128B of the Companies Act 2006 (option to keep membership information on central register) in respect of the company, deliver that information to the registrar as if it were information required to be delivered under section 128E of that Act.

(6) In this Schedule "the cancellation date", in relation to a share warrant, means the day its cancellation by a cancellation order or suspended cancellation order takes effect.

Registration of reduction of share capital

7 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a company if a share warrant of the company and the shares specified in it are cancelled by a cancellation order or a suspended cancellation order.

(2) The company must, before the end of the period of 15 days beginning with the cancellation date, deliver to the registrar—

(a) a copy of the order,

(b) in the case of a suspended cancellation order, a statement confirming that the share warrant and the shares specified in it have been cancelled by the order with effect from the cancellation date, and

(c) a statement of capital.

(3) The statement of capital must state with respect to the company's share capital as reduced by the cancellation of the share warrant and the shares specified in it—

(a) the total number of shares of the company,

(b) the aggregate nominal value of those shares,

(c) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and

(d) for each class of shares—

(i) such particulars of the rights attached to the shares as are prescribed by the Secretary of State under section 644(2)(c)(i) of the Companies Act 2006,

(ii) the total number of shares of that class, and

(iii) the aggregate nominal value of shares of that class.

(4) If the company fails to comply with this paragraph an offence is committed by—
(a) the company, and
(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(5) In the case of a public company, a statement of capital delivered under this paragraph is to be treated as a document subject to the Directive disclosure requirements for the purposes of the Companies Act 2006 (see section 1078 of that Act).

Reduction of share capital below authorised minimum in case of public company

8 (1) This paragraph applies where the court makes a cancellation order or a suspended cancellation order in relation to a public company and—
(a) in the case of a cancellation order, the order has the effect of bringing the nominal value of its allotted share capital below the authorised minimum, or
(b) in the case of a suspended cancellation order, the order may have that effect from the end of the grace period.

(2) The registrar must not register the cancellation order or (as the case may be) the suspended cancellation order if it has that effect from the end of the grace period unless—
(a) the court so directs in the order concerned, or
(b) the company is first re-registered as a private company.

(3) The expedited procedure for re-registration provided by section 651 of the Companies Act 2006 applies for the purposes of this paragraph as it applies for the purposes of section 650 of that Act.

(4) Where the court makes an order under section 651 of that Act in connection with a suspended cancellation order, the order under section 651 must be conditional on the suspended cancellation order having the effect mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b) from the end of the grace period.

Payment into court in connection with cancellation

9 (1) Where a share warrant is cancelled by a cancellation order or suspended cancellation order, the company concerned must, before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the cancellation date, make a payment into court of an amount equal to—
(a) the aggregate nominal value of the shares specified in the warrant and the whole of any premium paid on them, plus
(b) the suspension period amount.

(2) If a company fails to comply with sub-paragraph (1) an offence is committed by every officer of the company who is in default.

10 (1) A person who, at the end of the period of 7 months beginning with the commencement date, was the bearer of a share warrant which has been cancelled by a cancellation order or a suspended cancellation order may apply to the court for the sum paid into court under paragraph 9(1) in respect of the shares specified in the warrant to be paid to that person.

(2) Such an application may only be made during the period—
  (a) beginning with the day which is 6 months after the cancellation date, and
  (b) ending with the day which is 3 years after the cancellation date.

(3) The court may grant an application under sub-paragraph (1) only if it is satisfied that there are exceptional circumstances justifying the failure of the bearer of the share warrant to exercise the right of surrender—
  (a) in the case of a warrant cancelled by a cancellation order, before the end of the surrender period, or
  (b) in the case of a warrant cancelled by a suspended cancellation order, before the end of the grace period.

11 (1) This paragraph applies in relation to a company in respect of which a cancellation order or suspended cancellation order has been made if any of the following is appointed in relation to the company after the cancellation date—
  (a) an administrator;
  (b) an administrative receiver;
  (c) a liquidator;
and that person is referred to in this paragraph as the "office-holder".

(2) The office-holder may apply to the court for the sum paid into court under paragraph 9(1)(a) to be paid to the office-holder by way of a contribution to the company's assets.

(3) Such an application may only be made during the period—
  (a) beginning with the cancellation date, and
  (b) ending with the day which is 3 years after that date.

12 (1) Anything left of a sum paid into court under paragraph 9(1) immediately after the end of the period mentioned in paragraph 11(3) must be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) does not apply to any amount in respect of which an application under paragraph 10(1) or 11(2) has been made but not yet determined before the end of that period unless and until the application is dismissed and either—
  (a) the period for bringing an appeal against the dismissal has expired, or
  (b) in a case where an appeal is brought before the end of that period, the appeal is dismissed, abandoned or otherwise ceases to have effect.

Company with outstanding share warrants: prohibition on striking off

13 (1) An application under section 1003 of the Companies Act 2006 (application for voluntary striking off) on behalf of a company must not be made at a time when there is a share warrant issued by the company.

(2) It is an offence for a person to make an application in contravention of this section.

(3) In proceedings for such an offence it is a defence for the accused to prove that the accused did not know, and could not reasonably have known, of the existence of the share warrant.

Notices

14 (1) A notice required by virtue of any provision of this Schedule to be given to the bearer of a share warrant must be—
(a) published in the Gazette,
(b) communicated to that person in the same way (if any) as the company concerned normally communicates with that person for other purposes relating to the shares specified in the warrant, and
(c) made available in a prominent position on the company's website (if it has one) during the period mentioned in sub-paragraph (2) (and see sub-paragraph (3)).

(2) That period is the period beginning with the day on which the notice is published in the Gazette and ending with—
(a) in the case of a notice required by paragraph 2, the day on which a notice required by paragraph 4 is made available on the company's website;
(b) in the case of a notice required by paragraph 4, the day on which a notice required by paragraph 5(3) is made available on the company's website;
(c) in the case of a notice required by paragraph 5(3), the day on which the court makes a cancellation order or (as the case may be) suspended cancellation order in respect of the share warrant;
(d) in the case of a notice required by virtue of paragraph 6(3)(a), the end of the grace period.

(3) Nothing in this paragraph requires a notice to be made available on the company's website after the day on which the last of the share warrants issued by the company to be surrendered is surrendered.

(4) Sections 1143 to 1148 of the Companies Act 2006 (company communications provisions) apply for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

Company filings: language requirements

15 Sections 1103, 1104 and 1107 of the Companies Act 2006 (language requirements) apply to all documents required to be delivered to the registrar under this Part of this Schedule.

Application of sections 1112 and 1113 of the Companies Act 2006

16 Sections 1112 (general false statement offence) and 1113 (enforcement of company's filing obligations) of the Companies Act 2006 apply for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of the Companies Acts.

Offences

17 For the purposes of any offence under this Part of this Schedule a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

18 (1) A person guilty of an offence under paragraph 1(5) of this Schedule is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale

and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(2) A person guilty of an offence under any other provision of this Schedule is liable—
  (a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
  (b) on summary conviction—
    (i) in England and Wales, to a fine;
    (ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum.

19 The following sections of the Companies Act 2006 apply for the purposes of this Part of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of the Companies Acts—
  (a) sections 1121 and 1122 (liability of officer in default);
  (b) section 1125 (meaning of "daily default fine");
  (c) sections 1127 and 1128 (general provision about summary proceedings);
  (d) section 1129 (legal professional privilege);
  (e) section 1132 (production and inspection of documents).

Interpretation

20 (1) In this Part of this Schedule—
"cancellation date" has the meaning given by paragraph 6(6);
"cancellation order" has the meaning given by paragraph 5(2);
"commencement date" has the meaning given by paragraph 1(1);
"Companies Acts" has the same meaning as in the Companies Act 2006 (see section 2 of that Act);
"grace period" has the meaning given by paragraph 6(3)(b);
"surrender period" has the meaning given by paragraph 1(2);
"suspended cancellation order" has the meaning given by paragraph 6(3);
"suspension period amount" has the meaning given by paragraph 3(7);
"right of surrender" has the meaning given by paragraph 1(3).

(2) Expressions defined for the purposes of the Companies Acts have the same meaning in this Part of this Schedule as in those Acts.

Transitory provision

21 (1) Until section 94 (option to keep information on central register) comes into force, this Schedule has effect as if, in each of paragraphs 1(3) and 6(5), paragraph (b) (and the "or" preceding it) were omitted.

(2) Until section 97 (contents of statements of capital) comes into force, paragraph 7(3) of this Schedule has effect as if—
  (a) paragraph (c) were omitted, and
  (b) after paragraph (d) there were inserted ", and
    (e) the amount paid up and the amount (if any) unpaid on each share (whether on account of the nominal value of the share or by way of premium)."

PART 2

CONSEQUENTIAL AMENDMENTS

22 The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

23 In section 122 (share warrants)—

(a) for subsections (1) and (2) substitute—

"(1) Until a share warrant issued by a company is surrendered the following are deemed to be the particulars required to be entered in the register of members in respect of the warrant—

(a) the fact of the issue of the warrant,

(b) a statement of the shares included in the warrant, distinguishing each share by its number so long as the share has a number, and

(c) the date of the issue of the warrant.", and

(b) omit subsection (4).

24 In section 617 (alteration of share capital of limited company), in subsection (5), after paragraph (e) insert—

"(f) the cancellation of a share warrant issued by the company and of the shares specified in it by a cancellation order or suspended cancellation order made under paragraph 6 of Schedule 4 to the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015 (cancellation where share warrants not surrendered in accordance with that Schedule);

(g) the cancellation of a share warrant issued by the company and of the shares specified in it pursuant to section 1028A(2) or 1032A(2) (cancellation of share warrants on restoration of a company)."

25 In section 652 (liability of members following reduction of capital), in subsection (1)(a), for "or 649" substitute ", 649, 1028A or 1032A of this Act or paragraph 7 of Schedule 4 to the Small Business, Enterprise and Employment Act 2015".

26 (1) Omit section 780 (duty of company as to issue of share certificates on surrender of share warrant).

(2) The repeal of section 780 has no effect in relation to a share warrant surrendered for cancellation before the day on which section 84 comes into force.

27 (1) After section 1028 insert—

"1028A Administrative restoration of company with share warrants

(1) This section applies in relation to a company which has been struck off the register under section 1000 or 1001 and which, at the time it was struck off, had any share warrant in issue.

(2) If the registrar restores the company to the register under section 1025, the share warrant and the shares specified in it are cancelled with effect from the date the restoration takes effect.

(3) If as a result of subsection (2) the company has no issued share capital, the company must, before the end of the period of one month

beginning with the date the restoration takes effect, allot at least one share in the company; and section 549(1) does not apply to such an allotment.

(4) The company must, before the end of the period of 15 days beginning with the date the restoration takes effect, deliver a statement of capital to the registrar.

(5) Subsection (4) does not apply in a case where the company is required under subsection (3) to make an allotment (because in such a case section 555 will apply).

(6) The statement of capital must state with respect to the company's share capital as reduced by the cancellation of the share warrant and the shares specified in it—

(a) the total number of shares of the company,

(b) the aggregate nominal value of those shares,

(c) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and

(d) for each class of shares—

(i) prescribed particulars of the rights attached to the shares,

(ii) the total number of shares of that class, and

(iii) the aggregate nominal value of shares of that class.

(7) Where a share warrant is cancelled in accordance with subsection (2), the company must, as soon as reasonably practicable—

(a) enter the date the cancellation takes effect in its register of members, or

(b) where an election is in force under section 128B of the Companies Act 2006 (option to keep membership information on central register) in respect of the company, deliver that information to the registrar as if it were information required to be delivered under section 128E of that Act.

(8) Subsection (9) applies where—

(a) any property or right previously vested in or held on trust for the company in respect of any share specified in a share warrant has vested as *bona vacantia* (see section 1012), and

(b) the warrant and the share are cancelled on the restoration of the company in accordance with this section.

(9) On restoration of the company, that property or right—

(a) may not be returned to the company, and

(b) accordingly, remains vested as *bona vacantia*.

(10) If default is made in complying with subsection (3) or (4), an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(11) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—
(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;
(b) on summary conviction—
(i) in England and Wales, to a fine;
(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum."

(2) Until section 97 (contents of statements of capital) comes into force, the section 1028A inserted by sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if in subsection (6)—
(a) paragraph (c) were omitted, and
(b) after paragraph (d) there were inserted ", and
(e) the amount paid up and the amount (if any) unpaid on each share (whether on account of the nominal value of the share or by way of premium)."

(3) Until section 94 (option to keep information on central register) comes into force, the section 1028A inserted by sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if, in subsection (7), paragraph (b) (and the "or" preceding it) were omitted.

28 (1) After section 1032A insert—

"1032A Restoration by court of company with share warrants

(1) This section applies in relation to a company falling within section 1029(1) if, at the time it was dissolved, deemed to be dissolved or (as the case may be) struck off, it had any share warrant in issue.

(2) If the court orders the restoration of the company to the register, the order must also cancel the share warrant and the shares specified in it with effect from the date the restoration takes effect.

(3) If as a result of subsection (2) the company has no issued share capital, the company must, before the end of the period of one month beginning with the date the restoration takes effect, allot at least one share in the company; and section 549(1) does not apply to such an allotment.

(4) Subsection (6) applies in a case where—
(a) the application under section 1029 was made by a person mentioned in subsection (2)(b) or (h) of that section, or
(b) the court order specifies that it applies.

(5) But subsection (6) does not apply in any case where the company is required under subsection (3) to make an allotment (because in such a case section 555 will apply).

(6) In a case where this subsection applies, the company must, before the end of the period of 15 days beginning with the date the restoration takes effect, deliver a statement of capital to the registrar.

(7) The statement of capital must state with respect to the company's share capital as reduced by the cancellation of the share warrant and the shares specified in it—
(a) the total number of shares of the company,
(b) the aggregate nominal value of those shares,

(c) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and

(d) for each class of shares—

(i) prescribed particulars of the rights attached to the shares,

(ii) the total number of shares of that class, and

(iii) the aggregate nominal value of shares of that class.

(8) Where a share warrant is cancelled by an order as mentioned in subsection (2), the company must, as soon as reasonably practicable—

(a) enter the date the cancellation takes effect in its register of members, or

(b) where an election is in force under section 128B of the Companies Act 2006 (option to keep membership information on central register) in respect of the company, deliver that information to the registrar as if it were information required to be delivered under section 128E of that Act.

(9) Subsection (10) applies where—

(a) any property or right previously vested in or held on trust for the company in respect of any share specified in a share warrant has vested as *bona vacantia* (see section 1012), and

(b) the warrant and the share are cancelled on the restoration of the company in accordance with this section.

(10) On restoration of the company, that property or right—

(a) may not be returned to the company, and

(b) accordingly, remains vested as *bona vacantia*.

(11) If default is made in complying with subsection (3) or (6), an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(12) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable—

(a) on conviction on indictment, to a fine;

(b) on summary conviction—

(i) in England and Wales, to a fine;

(ii) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding the statutory maximum."

(2) Until section 97 (contents of statements of capital) comes into force, the section 1032A inserted by sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if in subsection (7)—

(a) paragraph (c) were omitted, and

(b) after paragraph (d) there were inserted ", and

(e) the amount paid up and the amount (if any) unpaid on each share (whether on account of the nominal value of the share or by way of premium)."

(3) Until section 94 (option to keep information on central register) comes into force, the section 1032A inserted by sub-paragraph (1) has effect as if, in subsection (8), paragraph (b) (and the "or" preceding it) were omitted.

SCHEDULE 5

Section 94

OPTION TO KEEP INFORMATION ON CENTRAL REGISTER

PART 1

CREATION OF THE OPTION

Register of members

1 Part 8 of the Companies Act 2006 (a company's members) is amended as follows.

2 In Chapter 2 (register of members), before section 113 insert—

"112A Alternative method of record-keeping

This Chapter must be read with Chapter 2A (which allows for an alternative method of record-keeping in the case of private companies)."

3 After Chapter 2 insert—

"CHAPTER 2A

OPTION TO KEEP INFORMATION ON CENTRAL REGISTER

128A Introduction

(1) This Chapter sets out rules allowing private companies to keep information on the register kept by the registrar instead of entering it in their register of members.

(2) The register kept by the registrar (see section 1080) is referred to in this Chapter as "the central register".

128B Right to make an election

(1) An election may be made under this section—
  (a) by the subscribers wishing to form a private company under this Act, or
  (b) by the private company itself once it is formed and registered.

(2) In the latter case, the election is of no effect unless, before it is made—
  (a) all the members of the company have assented to the making of the election, and
  (b) any overseas branch registers that the company was keeping under Chapter 3 have been discontinued and all the entries in those registers transferred to the company's register of members in accordance with section 135.

(3) An election under this section is made by giving notice of election to the registrar.

(4) If the notice is given by subscribers wishing to form a private company—
  (a) it must be given when the documents required to be delivered under section 9 are delivered to the registrar, and
  (b) it must be accompanied by a statement containing all the information that—
    (i) would be required (in the absence of the notice) to be entered in the company's register of members on incorporation of the company, and
    (ii) is not otherwise included in the documents delivered under section 9.

(5) If the notice is given by the company, it must be accompanied by—
  (a) a statement by the company—
    (i) that all the members of the company have assented to the making of the election, and
    (ii) if the company was keeping any overseas branch registers, that all such registers have been discontinued and all the entries in them transferred to the company's register of members in accordance with section 135, and
  (b) a statement containing all the information that is required to be contained in the company's register of members as at the date of the notice in respect of matters that are current as at that date.

(6) The company must where necessary update the statement sent under subsection (5)(b) to ensure that the final version delivered to the registrar contains all the information that is required to be contained in the company's register of members as at the time immediately before the election takes effect (see section 128C) in respect of matters that are current as at that time.

(7) The obligation in subsection (6) to update the statement includes an obligation to rectify it (where necessary) in consequence of the company's register of members being rectified (whether before or after the election takes effect).

(8) If default is made in complying with subsection (6), an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(9) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

(10) A reference in this Chapter to matters that are current as at a given date or time is a reference to—

(a) persons who are members of the company as at that date or time, and
(b) any other matters that are current as at that date or time.

128C Effective date of election

(1) An election made under section 128B takes effect when the notice of election is registered by the registrar.

(2) The election remains in force until either—
(a) the company ceases to be a private company, or
(b) a notice of withdrawal sent by the company under section 128J is registered by the registrar,
whichever occurs first.

128D Effect of election on obligations under Chapter 2

(1) The effect of an election under section 128B on a company's obligations under Chapter 2 is as follows.

(2) The company's obligation to maintain a register of members does not apply with respect to the period when the election is in force.

(3) This means that, during that period—
(a) the company must continue to keep a register of members in accordance with Chapter 2 (a "historic" register) containing all the information that was required to be stated in that register as at the time immediately before the election took effect, but
(b) the company does not have to update that register to reflect any changes that occur after that time.

(4) Subsections (2) and (3) apply to the index of members (if the company is obliged to keep an index of members) as they apply to the register of members.

(5) The provisions of Chapter 2 (including the rights to inspect or require copies of the register and to inspect the index) continue to apply to the historic register and, if applicable, the historic index during the period when the election is in force.

(6) The company must place a note in its historic register—
(a) stating that an election under section 128B is in force,
(b) recording when that election took effect, and
(c) indicating that up-to-date information about its members is available for public inspection on the central register.

(7) Subsections (7) and (8) of section 113 apply if a company makes default in complying with subsection (6) as they apply if a company makes default in complying with that section.

(8) The obligations under this section with respect to a historic register and historic index do not apply in a case where the election was made by subscribers wishing to form a private company.

128E Duty to notify registrar of changes

(1) The duty under subsection (2) applies during the period when an election under section 128B is in force.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar any relevant information that the company would during that period have been obliged under this Act to enter in its register of members, had the election not been in force.

(3) "Relevant information" means information other than—
  (a) the date mentioned in section 113(2)(b) (date when person registered as member),
  (b) the date mentioned in section 123(3)(b) (date when membership of limited company increases from one to two or more members), and
  (c) the dates mentioned in the following provisions, but only in cases where the date to be recorded in the central register is to be the date on which the document containing information of the relevant change is registered by the registrar—
    (i) section 113(2)(c) (date when person ceases to be member),
    (ii) section 123(2)(b) (date when company becomes single member company).

(4) The relevant information must be delivered as soon as reasonably practicable after the company becomes aware of it and, in any event, no later than the time by which the company would have been required to enter the information in its register of members.

(5) In a case of the kind described in subsection (3)(c), the company must, when it delivers information under subsection (2) of the relevant change, indicate to the registrar that, in accordance with section 1081(1A), the date to be recorded in the central register is to be the date on which the document containing that information is registered by the registrar.

(6) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(7) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 3 on the standard scale.

128F Information as to state of central register

(1) When a person inspects or requests a copy of material on the central register relating to a company in respect of which an election under section 128B is in force, the person may ask the company to confirm that all information that the company is required to deliver to the registrar under this Chapter has been delivered.

(2) If a company fails to respond to a request under subsection (1), an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.

(3) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction to a fine not exceeding level 3 on the standard scale.

128G Power of court to order company to remedy default or delay

(1) This section applies if—
  (a) the name of a person is without sufficient cause included in, or omitted from, information that a company delivers to the registrar under this Chapter concerning its members, or
  (b) default is made or unnecessary delay takes place in informing the registrar under this Chapter of—
    (i) the name of a person who is to be a member of the company, or
    (ii) the fact that a person has ceased or is to cease to be a member of the company.

(2) The person aggrieved, or any member of the company, or the company, may apply to the court for an order—
  (a) requiring the company to deliver to the registrar the information (or statements) necessary to rectify the position, and
  (b) where applicable, requiring the registrar to record under section 1081(1A) the date determined by the court.

(3) The court may either refuse the application or may make the order and order the company to pay any damages sustained by any party aggrieved.

(4) On such an application the court may decide—
  (a) any question relating to the title of a person who is a party to the application to have the person's name included in or omitted from information delivered to the registrar under this Chapter about the company's members, whether the question arises between members or alleged members, or between members or alleged members on the one hand and the company on the other hand, and
  (b) any question necessary or expedient to be decided for rectifying the position.

(5) Nothing in this section affects a person's rights under section 1095 or 1096 (rectification of register on application to registrar or under court order).

128H Central register to be evidence

(1) The central register is prima facie evidence of any matters about which a company is required to deliver information to the registrar under this Chapter.

(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to information to be included in a statement under section 128B(5)(b) or in any updated statement under section 128B(6).

128I Time limits for claims arising from delivery to registrar

(1) Liability incurred by a company—
  (a) from the delivery to the registrar of information under this Chapter, or
  (b) from a failure to deliver any such information,
is not enforceable more than 10 years after the date on which the information was delivered or, as the case may be, the failure first occurred.

(2) This is without prejudice to any lesser period of limitation (and, in Scotland, to any rule that the obligation giving rise to the liability prescribes before the expiry of that period).

128J Withdrawing the election

(1) A company may withdraw an election made by or in respect of it under section 128B.

(2) Withdrawal is achieved by giving notice of withdrawal to the registrar.

(3) The withdrawal takes effect when the notice is registered by the registrar.

(4) The effect of withdrawal is that the company's obligation under Chapter 2 to maintain a register of members applies from then on with respect to the period going forward.

(5) This means that, when the withdrawal takes effect—
  (a) the company must enter in its register of members all the information that is required to be contained in that register in respect of matters that are current as at that time,
  (b) the company must also retain in its register all the information that it was required under section 128D(3)(a) to keep in a historic register while the election was in force, but
  (c) the company is not required to enter in its register information relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current.

(6) The company must place a note in its register of members—
  (a) stating that the election under section 128B has been withdrawn,
  (b) recording when that withdrawal took effect, and
  (c) indicating that information about its members relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current is available for public inspection on the central register.

(7) Subsections (7) and (8) of section 113 apply if a company makes default in complying with subsection (6) as they apply if a company makes default in complying with that section.

128K Power to extend option to public companies

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this Act—

(a) to extend sections 128A to 128J (with or without modification) to public companies or public companies of a class specified in the regulations, and

(b) to make such other amendments as the Secretary of State thinks fit in consequence of that extension.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure."

Register of overseas members

4 In Chapter 3 of Part 8 of the Companies Act 2006 (overseas branch registers), in section 129 (overseas branch registers), at the end insert—

"(6) A company's right under subsection (1) to keep an overseas branch register does not apply during or with respect to any period when an election is in force in respect of the company under section 128B."

Register of directors and register of directors' residential addresses

5 Chapter 2 of Part 10 of the Companies Act 2006 (appointment and removal of directors) is amended as follows.

6 Under the heading "*Register of directors, etc*", before section 162 insert—

"161A Alternative method of record-keeping

Sections 162 to 167 must be read with sections 167A to 167E (which allow for an alternative method of record-keeping in the case of private companies)."

7 After section 167 insert—

"*Option to keep information on the central register*

167A Right to make an election

(1) An election may be made under this section in respect of a register of directors or a register of directors' residential addresses (or both).

(2) The election may be made—

(a) by the subscribers wishing to form a private company under this Act, or

(b) by the private company itself once it is formed and registered.

(3) The election is made by giving notice of election to the registrar.

(4) If the notice is given by subscribers wishing to form a private company, it must be given when the documents required to be delivered under section 9 are delivered to the registrar.

167B Effective date of election

(1) An election made under section 167A takes effect when the notice of election is registered by the registrar.

(2) The election remains in force until either—

(a) the company ceases to be a private company, or

(b) a notice of withdrawal sent by the company under section 167E is registered by the registrar,

whichever occurs first.

167C Effect of election on obligations under sections 162 to 167

(1) If an election is in force under section 167A with respect to a company, the company's obligations under sections 162 to 167—

(a) to keep and maintain a register of the relevant kind, and

(b) to notify the registrar of changes to it,

do not apply with respect to the period when the election is in force.

(2) The reference in subsection (1) to a register "of the relevant kind" is to a register (whether a register of directors or a register of directors' residential addresses) of the kind in respect of which the election is made.

167D Duty to notify registrar of changes

(1) The duty under subsection (2) applies during the period when an election under section 167A is in force.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar—

(a) any information of which the company would during that period have been obliged to give notice under section 167, had the election not been in force, and

(b) any statement that would have had to accompany such a notice.

(3) The information (and any accompanying statement) must be delivered as soon as reasonably practicable after the company becomes aware of the information and, in any event, no later than the time by which the company would have been required under section 167 to give notice of the information.

(4) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—

(a) the company, and

(b) every officer of the company who is in default.

For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction—

(a) in England and Wales, to a fine and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale;

(b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

167E Withdrawing the election

(1) A company may withdraw an election made by or in respect of it under section 167A.

(2) Withdrawal is achieved by giving notice of withdrawal to the registrar.

(3) The withdrawal takes effect when the notice is registered by the registrar.

(4) The effect of withdrawal is that the company's obligation under section 162 or (as the case may be) 165 to keep and maintain a register of the relevant kind, and its obligation under section 167 to notify the registrar of changes to that register, apply from then on with respect to the period going forward.

(5) This means that, when the withdrawal takes effect—

(a) the company must enter in that register all the information that is required to be contained in that register in respect of matters that are current as at that time, but

(b) the company is not required to enter in its register information relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current.

167F Power to extend option to public companies

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this Act—

(a) to extend sections 167A to 167E (with or without modification) to public companies or public companies of a class specified in the regulations, and

(b) to make such other amendments as the Secretary of State thinks fit in consequence of that extension.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure."

Register of secretaries

8 Part 12 of the Companies Act 2006 (company secretaries) is amended as follows.

9 After section 274 insert—

"274A Alternative method of record-keeping

Sections 275 and 276 must be read with sections 279A to 279E (which allow for an alternative method of record-keeping in the case of private companies)."

10 After section 279 insert—

"*Option to keep information on the central register*

279A Right to make an election

(1) An election may be made under this section—

(a) by the subscribers wishing to form a private company under this Act, or

(b) by the private company itself once it is formed and registered.

(2) The election is made by giving notice of election to the registrar.

(3) If the notice is given by subscribers wishing to form a private company, it must be given when the documents required to be delivered under section 9 are delivered to the registrar.

279B Effective date of election

(1) An election made under section 279A takes effect when the notice of election is registered by the registrar.

(2) The election remains in force until either—
  (a) the company ceases to be a private company, or
  (b) a notice of withdrawal sent by the company under section 279E is registered by the registrar,
whichever occurs first.

279C Effect of election on obligations under sections 275 and 276

If an election is in force under section 279A in respect of a company, the company's obligations—
  (a) to keep and maintain a register of secretaries under section 275, and
  (b) to notify the registrar of changes to it under section 276,
do not apply with respect to the period when the election is in force.

279D Duty to notify registrar of changes

(1) The duty under subsection (2) applies during the period when an election under section 279A is in force.

(2) The company must deliver to the registrar—
  (a) any information of which the company would during that period have been obliged to give notice under section 276, had the election not been in force, and
  (b) any statement that would have had to accompany such a notice.

(3) The information (and any accompanying statement) must be delivered as soon as reasonably practicable after the company becomes aware of the information and, in any event, no later than the time by which the company would have been obliged under section 276 to give notice of the information.

(4) If default is made in complying with this section, an offence is committed by—
  (a) the company, and
  (b) every officer of the company who is in default.
For this purpose a shadow director is treated as an officer of the company.

(5) A person guilty of an offence under this section is liable on summary conviction—
  (a) in England and Wales, to a fine and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine not exceeding the greater of £500 and one-tenth of level 4 on the standard scale;
  (b) in Scotland or Northern Ireland, to a fine not exceeding level 5 on the standard scale and, for continued contravention, a

daily default fine not exceeding one-tenth of level 5 on the standard scale.

279E Withdrawing the election

(1) A company may withdraw an election made by or in respect of it under section 279A.

(2) Withdrawal is achieved by giving notice of withdrawal to the registrar.

(3) The withdrawal takes effect when the notice is registered by the registrar.

(4) The effect of withdrawal is that the company's obligation under section 275 to keep and maintain a register of secretaries, and its obligation under section 276 to notify the registrar of changes to that register, apply from then on with respect to the period going forward.

(5) This means that, when the withdrawal takes effect—

(a) the company must enter in its register of secretaries all the information that is required to be contained in that register in respect of matters that are current as at that time, but

(b) the company is not required to enter in its register information relating to the period when the election was in force that is no longer current.

279F Power to extend option to public companies

(1) The Secretary of State may by regulations amend this Act—

(a) to extend sections 279A to 279E (with or without modification) to public companies or public companies of a class specified in the regulations, and

(b) to make such other amendments as the Secretary of State thinks fit in consequence of that extension.

(2) Regulations under this section are subject to affirmative resolution procedure."

PART 2

RELATED AMENDMENTS

11 The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

12 In section 12 (statement of proposed officers), in subsection (2), after "will be required" insert "(or, in the absence of an election under section 167A or 279A, would be required)".

13 In section 112 (the members of a company), after subsection (2) insert—

"(3) Where an election under section 128B is in force in respect of a company—

(a) the requirement in subsection (1) to enter particulars of members in the company's register of members does not apply, and

(b) subsection (2) has effect as if the reference to a person whose name is entered in the company's register of members were a reference to a person with respect to whom the following steps have been taken—

(i) the person's name has been delivered to the registrar under section 128E, and

(ii) the document containing that information has been registered by the registrar."

14 In section 127 (register to be evidence), after the words "in it" insert ", except for any matters of which the central register is prima facie evidence by virtue of section 128H".

15 In section 246 (putting the address on the public record)—

(a) after subsection (3) insert—

"(3A) But—

(a) subsection (3)(a) does not apply if an election under section 167A is in force in respect of the company's register of directors, and

(b) subsection (3)(b) does not apply if an election under section 167A is in force in respect of the company's register of directors' residential addresses.",

(b) after subsection (4) insert—

"(4A) If an election under section 167A is in force in respect of the company's register of directors, the company must, in place of doing the things mentioned in subsection (4)(a) and (b), deliver the particulars to the registrar in accordance with section 167D.", and

(c) in subsection (5), for "or (4)" substitute ", (4) or (4A)".

16 In section 286 (votes of joint holders of shares), in subsection (2), after "register of members" insert "(or, if an election under section 128B is in force in respect of the company, in the register kept by the registrar under section 1080)".

17 In section 311 (contents of notices of meetings), in subsection (3)(b)(i), after "register of members" insert "(or, if an election under section 128B is in force in respect of the company, by reference to the register kept by the registrar under section 1080)".

18 In section 360B (traded companies: requirements for participating in and voting at general meetings), after subsection (4) insert—

"(5) If an election is in force under section 128B in respect of a company, the reference in subsection (2) to the register of members is to be read as a reference to the register kept by the registrar under section 1080."

19 In section 554 (registration of allotment), after subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) If an election is in force under Chapter 2A of Part 8, the obligation under subsection (1) to register the allotment of shares is replaced by an obligation to deliver particulars of the allotment of shares to the registrar in accordance with that Chapter."

20 In section 558 (when shares are allotted), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, to have the person's name and other particulars delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 and registered by the registrar)".

21 In section 588 (liability of subsequent holders of shares), in subsection (3)(a), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, to have his name and other particulars delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 and registered by the registrar)".

22 In section 605 (liability of subsequent holders of shares), in subsection (4)(a), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, to have his name and other particulars delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 and registered by the registrar)".

23 In section 616 (interpretation of Chapter 7), in subsection (3), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, have your name and other particulars delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 and registered by the registrar)".

24 In section 655 (shares no bar to damages against company), after "members" insert "(or have his name and other particulars delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 and registered by the registrar)".

25 In section 724 (Treasury shares), in subsection (4), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, the company's name must be delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8)".

26 In section 770 (registration of transfer), after subsection (2) insert—

"(3) If an election under Chapter 2A of Part 8 is in force in respect of the company, references in this section to registering a transfer (or a person) are to be read as references to delivering particulars of that transfer (or person) to the registrar under that Chapter."

27 In section 771 (procedure on transfer being lodged), after subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) If an election is in force under Chapter 2A of Part 8 in respect of the company, references in this section to registering the transfer are to be read as references to delivering particulars of the transfer to the registrar in accordance with that Chapter."

28 In section 772 (transfer of shares on application of transferor)—

(a) after "the name of the transferee" insert "(or, as the case may be, deliver the name of the transferee to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8)", and

(b) after "entry" insert "(or delivery)".

29 In section 786 (provision enabling or requiring arrangements to be adopted), in subsection (3)(a), after "members" insert "(or, as the case may be, delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8)".

30 In section 1068 (registrar's requirements as to form, authentication and manner of delivery), after subsection (6) insert—

"(6A) But the power conferred by this section does authorise the registrar to require any document permitted or required to be delivered to the registrar under Chapter 2A of Part 8 (option to keep membership information on central register) to be delivered by electronic means."

31 (1) Section 1081 (annotation of the register) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) If the registrar registers a document delivered by a company under section 128E that, by virtue of subsection (3)(a), (b) or (c) of that section, does not specify the relevant date, the registrar must place a note in the register recording as that date the date on which the document was registered by the registrar."

(3) In subsection (6), after "(1)" insert "or (1A)".

32 In section 1094 (administrative removal of material from the register), in subsection (3)(a)—

(a) omit "or" at the end of sub-paragraph (vii),

(b) insert ", or" at the end of sub-paragraph (viii), and

(c) after that sub-paragraph insert—

"(ix) a change in its membership particulars of which were delivered to the registrar under section 128E (duty to notify registrar of changes while election to keep information on central register is in force);".

33 In section 1136 (regulations about where certain company records to be kept available for inspection), in subsection (2), after the entry for section 114 insert—

"section 128D (historic register of members);".

34 In Schedule 5 (communications by a company)—

(a) in paragraph 4 (address for communications in hard copy form), after sub-paragraph (1) insert—

"(1A) Sub-paragraph (1) has effect—

(a) where an election under section 128B is in force, as if the reference in paragraph (c) to the company's register of members were a reference to the register kept by the registrar under section 1080, and

(b) where an election under section 167A is in force in respect of the company's register of directors, as if the reference in paragraph (d) to the company's register of directors were a reference to the register kept by the registrar under section 1080.", and

(b) in paragraph 16 (joint holders of shares or debentures), after sub-paragraph (3) insert—

"(3A) Where an election under section 128B is in force, the reference in sub-paragraph (3)(b) to the register of members is to be read as a reference to the register kept by the registrar under section 1080."

35 In Schedule 8 (index of defined expressions), in the appropriate place insert—

"the central register

—in Chapter 2A of Part 8	section 128A(2)
—in Chapter 4 of Part 21A	section 790W(2)".

SCHEDULE 6

Section 97

CONTENTS OF STATEMENTS OF CAPITAL

1 The Companies Act 2006 is amended as follows.

2 In section 10 (statement of capital and initial shareholdings), in subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) to be unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

3 In section 32 (constitutional documents to be provided to members), in subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

4 In section 108 (statement of capital required on re-registration as a limited company which already has allotted share capital), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

5 In section 555 (return of allotment by limited company), in subsection (4)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

6 In section 619 (notice to registrar of sub-division or consolidation), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

7 In section 621 (notice to registrar of reconversion of stock into shares), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

8 In section 625 (notice to registrar of redenomination), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

9 In section 627 (notice to registrar of reduction of capital in connection with redenomination), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

10 In section 644 (registration of resolution reducing share capital), in subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

11 In section 649 (registration of court order confirming reduction of share capital), in subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

12 In section 663 (notice to registrar of cancellation of shares), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

13 In section 689 (notice to registrar of redemption), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

14 In section 708 (notice to registrar of cancellation on purchase of own shares), in subsection (3)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

15 In section 720B (registration of resolution etc. for purchase of own shares in connection with employees' share scheme), in subsection (2)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

16 In section 730 (notification of cancellation of treasury shares), in subsection (5)—

(a) after paragraph (b) insert—

"(ba) the aggregate amount (if any) unpaid on those shares (whether on account of their nominal value or by way of premium), and", and

(b) omit paragraph (d) (and the "and" immediately before it).

SCHEDULE 7

Section 111

SECTIONS 104 TO 110: CONSEQUENTIAL AND RELATED AMENDMENTS

PART 1

COMPANY DIRECTORS DISQUALIFICATION ACT 1986

1 The Company Directors Disqualification Act 1986 is amended as follows.

2 In section 1 (disqualification orders: general) in subsection (2), for "section 6" substitute "sections 6 and 8ZA".

3 (1) Section 1A (disqualification undertakings: general) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for "7 and 8" substitute "5A, 7, 8, 8ZC and 8ZE".

(3) In subsection (2), after "7" insert "or 8ZC".

4 (1) Section 2 (disqualification on conviction of indictable offence) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) In subsection (1), "company" includes overseas company."

(3) In subsection (2), after paragraph (a) insert—

"(aa) in relation to an overseas company not falling within paragraph (a), the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session, or".

5 (1) Section 3 (disqualification for persistent breaches of companies legislation) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (3) insert—

"(3A) In this section "company" includes overseas company."

(3) In subsection (4)—

(a) after "means" insert "—

(a) ", and

(b) after "committed" insert ", or

(b) in relation to an overseas company not falling within paragraph (a), the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session."

6 In section 5 (disqualification on summary conviction), after subsection (4A) insert—

"(4B) In this section "company" includes overseas company."

7 In section 6 (duty of court to disqualify unfit directors of insolvent companies), in subsection (2), omit "and the next".

8 In section 7 (disqualifications under section 6: applications and undertakings), after subsection (4) insert—

"(5) Subsections (1A) and (2) of section 6 apply for the purposes of this section as they apply for the purposes of that section."

9 Before section 8A insert—

"Further provision about disqualification undertakings"

10 In section 8A (variation etc of disqualification undertaking), in subsection (3)—

(a) before paragraph (a) insert—

"(za) in the case of an undertaking given under section 8ZC has the same meaning as in section 8ZA;

(zb) in the case of an undertaking given under section 8ZE means the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session;", and

(b) in paragraph (b), after "section" insert "5A(5),".

11 In section 10 (participation in wrongful trading), after subsection (2) insert—

"(3) In this section "company" includes overseas company."

12 (1) Section 16 (application for disqualification order) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), omit "by the court having jurisdiction to wind up a company".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) for "with jurisdiction to wind up companies" substitute ", other than a court mentioned in section 2(2)(b) or (c),", and

(b) after "any company" insert "or overseas company".

13 (1) Section 17 (application for leave under an order or undertaking) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (3), after "under section" insert "5A,".

(3) After subsection (3) insert—

"(3ZA) Where a person is subject to a disqualification undertaking accepted at any time under section 8ZC, any application for leave for the purposes of section 1A(1)(a) must be made to any court to which, if the Secretary of State had applied for a disqualification order under section 8ZA at that time, that application could have been made.

(3ZB) Where a person is subject to a disqualification undertaking accepted at any time under section 8ZE, any application for leave for the purposes of section 1A(1)(a) must be made to the High Court or, in Scotland, the Court of Session."

14 In section 18 (register of disqualification orders and undertakings), in subsection (2A)(a), for "7 or 8" substitute "5A, 7, 8, 8ZC or 8ZE".

15 In section 20 (admissibility in evidence of statements), in subsection (1), for "6 to 10, 15" substitute "5A, 6 to 10, 12C, 15 to 15C".

16 In section 21 (interaction with Insolvency Act 1986), in each of subsections (2) and (3), for "6 to 10, 13, 14, 15" substitute "5A, 6 to 10, 12C to 15C".

17 In section 22 (interpretation), after subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) An "overseas company" is a company incorporated or formed outside Great Britain."

18 In section 22A (application of Act to building societies), omit subsection (4).

19 In section 22B (application of Act to incorporated friendly societies)—

(a) after subsection (3) insert—

"(3A) In relation to an incorporated friendly society, this Act applies as if sections 8ZA to 8ZE were omitted.", and

(b) omit subsection (4).

20 In section 22C (application of Act to NHS foundation trusts) omit subsection (3).

21 Omit section 22D (application of Act to open-ended investment companies).

22 (1) Section 22E (application of Act to registered societies) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (4)—

(a) omit paragraph (c), and

(b) after paragraph (e) insert—

"(f) sections 8ZA to 8ZE are to be disregarded."

(3) Omit subsection (5).

23 In section 22F (application of Act to charitable incorporated organisations) omit subsection (4).

PART 2

OTHER ENACTMENTS

Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprises) Act 2004

24 Omit paragraph 28 of Schedule 2 to the Companies (Audit, Investigations and Community Enterprises) Act 2004.

Companies Act 2006

25 Omit section 1039 of the Companies Act 2006 (disqualification orders consequential amendments).

SCHEDULE 8

Section 112

NORTHERN IRELAND: PROVISION CORRESPONDING TO SECTIONS 104 TO 111

The Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002

1 In this Schedule "the 2002 Order" means the Company Directors Disqualification (Northern Ireland) Order 2002 (S.I. 2002/3150 (N.I. 4)).

Convictions abroad

2 (1) After Article 8 of the 2002 Order insert—

"8A Disqualification for certain convictions abroad

(1) If it appears to the Department that it is expedient in the public interest that a disqualification order under this Article should be made against a person, the Department may apply to the High Court for such an order.

(2) The High Court may, on an application under paragraph (1), make a disqualification order against a person who has been convicted of a relevant foreign offence.

(3) A "relevant foreign offence" is an offence committed outside Northern Ireland—

(a) in connection with—

(i) the promotion, formation, management, liquidation or striking off of a company (or any similar procedure),

(ii) the receivership of a company's property (or any similar procedure), or

(iii) a person being an administrative receiver of a company (or holding a similar position), and

(b) which corresponds to an indictable offence under the law of Northern Ireland.

(4) Where it appears to the Department that, in the case of a person who has offered to give a disqualification undertaking—

(a) the person has been convicted of a relevant foreign offence, and

(b) it is expedient in the public interest that the Department should accept the undertaking (instead of applying, or proceeding with an application, for a disqualification order),

the Department may accept the undertaking.

(5) In this Article, "company" includes an overseas company.

(6) The maximum period of disqualification under an order under this Article is 15 years."

(2) Article 8A(2) and (4) of the 2002 Order, as inserted by this paragraph, apply in relation to a conviction of a relevant foreign offence which occurs on or after the day on which this paragraph comes into force regardless of whether the act or omission which constituted the offence occurred before that day.

Determining unfitness and disqualification orders: matters to be taken into account

3 (1) The 2002 Order is amended as follows.

(2) In Article 9 (duty of High Court to disqualify unfit directors of insolvent companies)—

(a) in paragraph (1)(b), for "any other company or companies" substitute "one or more other companies or overseas companies",

(b) after paragraph (1) insert—

"(1A) In this Article references to a person's conduct as a director of any company or overseas company include, where that company or overseas company has become insolvent, references to that person's conduct in relation to any matter connected with or arising out of the insolvency.",

(c) in paragraph (2), omit the words from "and references" to the end, and

(d) after paragraph (2) insert—

"(2A) For the purposes of this Article, an overseas company becomes insolvent if the company enters into insolvency proceedings of any description (including interim proceedings) in any jurisdiction.

(2B) In this Article and Article 10, "director" includes a shadow director."

(3) In Article 11 (disqualification where expedient in public interest)—

(a) in paragraph (3)(a) after "shadow director" insert "(either taken alone or taken together with his conduct as a director or shadow director of one or more other companies or overseas companies),",

(b) in paragraph (4) after "the company" insert "(either taken alone or taken together with his conduct as a director or shadow director of one or more other companies or overseas companies)", and

(c) after paragraph (4) insert—

"(4A) Paragraph (1A) of Article 9 applies for the purposes of this Article as it applies for the purposes of that Article."

(4) Omit Article 13 (matters for determining unfitness of directors).

(5) After Article 17 insert—

"17A Determining unfitness etc.: matters to be taken into account

(1) This Article applies where the High Court must determine—

(a) whether a person's conduct as a director of one or more companies or overseas companies makes the person unfit to be concerned in the management of a company;

(b) whether to exercise any discretion it has to make a disqualification order under any of Articles 5 to 7, 8A, 11 or 14;

(c) where the Court has decided to make a disqualification order under any of those Articles or is required to make an order under Article 9, what the period of disqualification should be.

(2) This Article also applies where the Department must determine—

(a) whether a person's conduct as a director of one or more companies or overseas companies makes the person unfit to be concerned in the management of a company;

(b) whether to exercise any discretion the Department has to accept a disqualification undertaking under any of Articles 8A, 10 or 11.

(3) In making any such determination in relation to a person, the High Court or the Department must—

(a) in every case, have regard in particular to the matters set out in paragraphs 1 to 4 of Schedule 1;

(b) in a case where the person concerned is or has been a director of a company or overseas company, also have regard in particular to the matters set out in paragraphs 5 to 7 of that Schedule.

(4) In this Article "director" includes a shadow director.

(5) Paragraph (1A) of Article 9 applies for the purposes of this Article as it applies for the purposes of that Article.

(6) The Department may by order modify Schedule 1; and such an order may contain such transitional provision as may appear to the Department to be necessary or expedient.

(7) An order under paragraph (5) is subject to affirmative resolution."

(6) For Schedule 1 (matters determining unfitness of directors) substitute—

"SCHEDULE 1 Article 17A

DETERMINING UNFITNESS ETC: MATTERS TO BE TAKEN INTO ACCOUNT

Matters to be taken into account in all cases

1 The extent to which the person was responsible for the causes of any material contravention by a company or overseas company of any applicable legislative or other requirement.

2 Where applicable, the extent to which the person was responsible for the causes of a company or overseas company becoming insolvent.

3 The frequency of conduct of the person which falls within paragraph 1 or 2.

4 The nature and extent of any loss or harm caused, or any potential loss or harm which could have been caused, by the person's conduct in relation to a company or overseas company.

Additional matters to be taken into account where the person is or has been a director

5 Any misfeasance or breach of any fiduciary duty by the director in relation to a company or overseas company.

6 Any material breach of any legislative or other obligation of the director which applies as a result of being a director of a company or overseas company.

7 The frequency of conduct of the director which falls within paragraph 5 or 6.

Interpretation

8 Paragraphs (1A) to (2A) of Article 9 apply for the purposes of this Schedule as they apply for the purposes of that Article.

9 In this Schedule "director" includes a shadow director."

Extension of period for applying for disqualification order for unfit directors

4 (1) In Article 10(2) of the 2002 Order (period within which application may be made for disqualification order against unfit director of insolvent company), for "2 years" substitute "3 years".

(2) Sub-paragraph (1) applies only to an application relating to a company which has become insolvent after the commencement of that sub-paragraph.

(3) Article 9(2) of the 2002 Order (meaning of "becoming insolvent") applies for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2) as it applies for the purposes of Article 9 of that Order.

Reports of office-holders on conduct of directors of insolvent companies

5 (1) The 2002 Order is amended as follows.

(2) After Article 10 insert—

"10A Office-holder's report on conduct of directors

(1) The office-holder in respect of a company which is insolvent must prepare a report (a "conduct report") about the conduct of each person who was a director of the company—

(a) on the insolvency date, or

(b) at any time during the period of 3 years ending with that date.

(2) For the purposes of this Article a company is insolvent if—

(a) the company is in liquidation and at the time it went into liquidation its assets were insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up,

(b) the company has entered administration, or

(c) an administrative receiver of the company has been appointed;

and paragraph (1A) of Article 9 applies for the purposes of this Article as it applies for the purposes of that Article.

(3) A conduct report must, in relation to each person, describe any conduct of the person which may assist the Department in deciding whether to exercise the power under Article 10(1) or (3) in relation to that person.

(4) The office-holder must send the conduct report to the Department before the end of—

(a) the period of 3 months beginning with the insolvency date, or

(b) such other longer period as the Department considers appropriate in the particular circumstances.

(5) If new information comes to the attention of an office-holder, the office-holder must send that information to the Department as soon as reasonably practicable.

(6) "New information" is information which an office-holder considers should have been included in a conduct report prepared in relation to the company, or would have been so included had it been available before the report was sent.

(7) If there is more than one office-holder in respect of a company at any particular time (because the company is insolvent by virtue of falling within more than one sub-paragraph of paragraph (2) at that time), paragraph (1) applies only to the first of the office-holders to be appointed.

(8) In the case of a company which is at different times insolvent by virtue of falling within one or more different sub-paragraphs of paragraph (2)—

(a) the references in paragraph (1) to the insolvency date are to be read as references to the first such date during the period in which the company is insolvent, and

(b) paragraph (1) does not apply to an office-holder if at any time during the period in which the company is insolvent a conduct report has already been prepared and sent to the Department.

(9) The "office-holder" in respect of a company which is insolvent is—

(a) in the case of a company being wound up by the High Court, the official receiver;

(b) in the case of a company being wound up otherwise, the liquidator;

(c) in the case of a company in administration, the administrator;

(d) in the case of a company of which there is an administrative receiver, the receiver.

(10) The "insolvency date"—

(a) in the case of a company being wound up by the High Court, means the date on which the Court makes the winding-up order (see Article 105 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989);

(b) in the case of a company being wound up by way of a members' voluntary winding up, means the date on which the liquidator forms the opinion that the company will be unable to pay its debts in full (together with interest at the official rate) within the period stated in the directors' declaration of solvency under Article 75 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989;

(c) in the case of a company being wound up by way of a creditors' voluntary winding up where no such declaration under Article 75 of that Order has been made, means the date of the passing of the resolution for voluntary winding up;

(d) in the case of a company which has entered administration, means the date the company did so;

(e) in the case of a company in respect of which an administrative receiver has been appointed, means the date of that appointment.

(11) For the purposes of paragraph (10)(e), any appointment of an administrative receiver to replace an administrative receiver who has died or vacated office pursuant to Article 55 of the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989 is to be ignored.

(12) In this Article, "director" includes a shadow director."

(3) In Article 10 (disqualification order or undertaking and reporting provisions), omit paragraph (4).

(4) For the heading to Article 10 substitute "Disqualification orders under Article 9: applications and acceptance of undertakings".

(5) In consequence of the amendment made by sub-paragraph (3), omit paragraph 64 of Schedule 2 to the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)).

Directors: removal of restriction on application for disqualification order

6 (1) The 2002 Order is amended as follows.

(2) In Article 11 (disqualification of director after investigation of company)—

(a) in paragraph (1), omit "from investigative material",

(b) omit paragraph (2), and

(c) in paragraph (3), omit "from such report, information or documents".

(3) For the heading of that Article substitute "Disqualification of director on finding of unfitness".

Persons instructing unfit director

7 After Article 11 of the 2002 Order insert—

"Persons instructing unfit directors

11A Order disqualifying person instructing unfit director of insolvent company

(1) The High Court may make a disqualification order against a person ("P") if, on an application under Article 11B, it is satisfied—
  (a) either—
    (i) that a disqualification order under Article 9 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company, or
    (ii) that the Department has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under Article 10(3), and
  (b) that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this Article as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this Article, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—
  (a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the order made under Article 9, or
  (b) in relation to which the undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under Article 10(3),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(4) Under this Article the minimum period of disqualification is 2 years and the maximum period is 15 years.

11B Application for order under Article 11A

(1) If it appears to the Department that it is expedient in the public interest that a disqualification order should be made against a person under Article 11A, the Department may—
  (a) make an application to the High Court for such an order, or
  (b) in a case where an application for an order under Article 9 against the main transgressor has been made by the official receiver, direct the official receiver to make such an application.

(2) Except with the leave of the High Court, an application for a disqualification order under Article 11A must not be made after the end of the period of 3 years beginning with the day on which the company in question became insolvent (within the meaning given by Article 9(2)).

(3) Paragraph (5) of Article 10 applies for the purposes of this Article as it applies for the purposes of that Article.

11C Disqualification undertaking instead of an order under Article 11A

(1) If it appears to the Department that it is expedient in the public interest to do so, the Department may accept a disqualification undertaking from a person ("P") if—
  (a) any of the following is the case—
    (i) a disqualification order under Article 9 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company,
    (ii) the Department has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under Article 10(3), or
    (iii) it appears to the Department that such an undertaking could be accepted from such a person (if one were offered), and
  (b) it appears to the Department that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this Article as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this Article, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—
  (a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the disqualification order made under Article 9,
  (b) in relation to which the disqualification undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under Article 10(3), or
  (c) which led the Department to the conclusion set out in paragraph (1)(a)(iii),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(4) Paragraph (5) of Article 10 applies for the purposes of this Article as it applies for the purposes of that Article.

11D Order disqualifying person instructing unfit director: other cases

(1) The High Court may make a disqualification order against a person ("P") if, on an application under this Article, it is satisfied—
  (a) either—
    (i) that a disqualification order under Article 11 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company, or
    (ii) that the Department has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under Article 11(3), and
  (b) that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this Article as "the main transgressor".

(2) The Department may make an application to the High Court for a disqualification order against P under this Article if it appears to the Department that it is expedient in the public interest for such an order to be made.

(3) For the purposes of this Article, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—
  (a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the order made under Article 11, or
  (b) in relation to which the undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under Article 11(3),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(4) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity.

(5) Under this Article the maximum period of disqualification is 15 years.

11E Disqualification undertaking instead of an order under Article 11D

(1) If it appears to the Department that it is expedient in the public interest to do so, the Department may accept a disqualification undertaking from a person ("P") if—
  (a) any of the following is the case—
    (i) a disqualification order under Article 11 has been made against a person who is or has been a director (but not a shadow director) of a company,
    (ii) the Department has accepted a disqualification undertaking from such a person under Article 11(3), or
    (iii) it appears to the Department that such an undertaking could be accepted from such a person (if one were offered), and
  (b) it appears to the Department that P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the person.

That person is referred to in this Article as "the main transgressor".

(2) For the purposes of this Article, P exercised the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor if any of the conduct—
  (a) for which the main transgressor is subject to the disqualification order made under Article 11,
  (b) in relation to which the disqualification undertaking was accepted from the main transgressor under Article 11(3), or
  (c) which led the Department to the conclusion set out in paragraph (1)(a)(iii),

was the result of the main transgressor acting in accordance with P's directions or instructions.

(3) But P does not exercise the requisite amount of influence over the main transgressor by reason only that the main transgressor acts on advice given by P in a professional capacity."

Compensation orders and undertakings

8 After Article 19 of the 2002 Order insert—

"Compensation orders and undertakings

19A Compensation orders and undertakings

(1) The High Court may make a compensation order against a person on the application of the Department if the Court is satisfied that the conditions mentioned in paragraph (3) are met.

(2) If it appears to the Department that the conditions mentioned in paragraph (3) are met in respect of a person who has offered to give the Department a compensation undertaking, the Department may accept the undertaking instead of applying, or proceeding with an application, for a compensation order.

(3) The conditions are that—
  (a) the person is subject to a disqualification order or disqualification undertaking under this Order, and
  (b) conduct for which the person is subject to the order or undertaking has caused loss to one or more creditors of an insolvent company of which the person has at any time been a director.

(4) An "insolvent company" is a company that is or has been insolvent and a company becomes insolvent if—
  (a) the company goes into liquidation at a time when its assets are insufficient for the payment of its debts and other liabilities and the expenses of the winding up,
  (b) the company enters administration, or
  (c) an administrative receiver of the company is appointed.

(5) The Department may apply for a compensation order at any time before the end of the period of two years beginning with the date on which the disqualification order referred to in paragraph (3)(a) was made, or the disqualification undertaking referred to in that paragraph was accepted.

(6) In the case of a person subject to a disqualification order under Article 11A or 11D, or a disqualification undertaking under Article 11C or 11E, the reference in paragraph (3)(b) to conduct is a reference to the conduct of the main transgressor in relation to which the person has exercised the requisite amount of influence.

19B Amounts payable under compensation orders and undertakings

(1) A compensation order is an order requiring the person against whom it is made to pay an amount specified in the order—
  (a) to the Department for the benefit of—
    (i) a creditor or creditors specified in the order;
    (ii) a class or classes of creditor so specified;
  (b) as a contribution to the assets of a company so specified.

(2) A compensation undertaking is an undertaking to pay an amount specified in the undertaking—
  (a) to the Department for the benefit of—
    (i) a creditor or creditors specified in the undertaking;
    (ii) a class or classes of creditor so specified;
  (b) as a contribution to the assets of a company so specified.

(3) When specifying an amount the High Court (in the case of an order) and the Department (in the case of an undertaking) must in particular have regard to—
  (a) the amount of the loss caused;
  (b) the nature of the conduct mentioned in Article 19A(3)(b);
  (c) whether the person has made any other financial contribution in recompense for the conduct (whether under a statutory provision or otherwise).

(4) An amount payable by virtue of paragraph (2) under a compensation undertaking is recoverable as if payable under a court order.

(5) An amount payable under a compensation order or compensation undertaking is provable as a bankruptcy debt.

19C Variation and revocation of compensation undertakings

(1) The High Court may, on the application of a person who is subject to a compensation undertaking—
  (a) reduce the amount payable under the undertaking, or
  (b) provide for the undertaking not to have effect.

(2) On the hearing of an application under paragraph (1), the Department must appear and call the attention of the Court to any matters which the Department considers relevant, and may give evidence or call witnesses."

Amendments consequential on, or related to, amendments made by paragraphs 2 to 8

9 (1) The 2002 Order is amended as follows.

(2) In Article 2(2) (interpretation), after the definition of "the official receiver" insert—

""overseas company" is a company which is incorporated or formed outside Northern Ireland;".

(3) In Article 3 (disqualification orders: general), in paragraph (2), for "Article 9" substitute "Articles 9 and 11A".

(4) In Article 4 (disqualification undertakings: general)—
  (a) in paragraph (1), for "10 and 11" substitute "8A, 10, 11, 11C and 11E", and
  (b) in paragraph (2), after "10" insert "or 11C".

(5) In Article 5 (disqualification on conviction of offence punishable only on indictment or either on indictment or summary conviction), after paragraph (1) insert—

"(1A) In paragraph (1), "company" includes overseas company."

(6) In Article 6 (disqualification for persistent default under companies legislation), after paragraph (3A) insert—

"(3B) In this Article "company" includes overseas company."

(7) In Article 8 (disqualification on summary conviction of offence), after paragraph (4A) insert—

"(4B) In this Article "company" includes overseas company."

(8) In Article 9 (duty of High Court to disqualify unfit directors of insolvent companies), in paragraph (2), omit "and Article 10".

(9) In Article 10 (disqualifications under Article 9: applications and undertakings), after paragraph (5) insert—

"(6) Paragraphs (1A) and (2) of Article 9 apply for the purposes of this Article as they apply for the purposes of that Article."

(10) Before Article 12 insert—

"Further provision about disqualification undertakings".

(11) In Article 14 (participation in wrongful trading), after paragraph (2) insert—

"(3) In this Article "company" includes overseas company."

(12) In Article 20 (application for disqualification order), in paragraph (2), after "any company" insert "or overseas company".

(13) In Article 22 (register of disqualification orders and undertakings), in paragraph (3)(a), for "10 or 11" substitute "8A, 10, 11, 11C or 11E".

(14) In Article 23 (admissibility in evidence of statements), in paragraph (1)—
(a) for "9 to 14" substitute "8A to 14, 17A", and
(b) after "or 19" insert "to 19C".

(15) In Article 24 (interaction with the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 1989), in paragraphs (1) and (2)—
(a) for "9 to 14" substitute "8A to 14, 17A", and
(b) after "or 19" insert "to 19C".

(16) In Article 24D (application of Order to building societies), omit paragraph (4).

(17) Omit Article 24E (application of Order to open-ended investment companies).

(18) In Article 25 (application of Order to incorporated friendly societies)—
(a) after paragraph (3) insert—

"(3A) In relation to an incorporated friendly society, this Order applies as if Articles 11A to 11E were omitted.", and
(b) omit paragraph (4).

(19) In Article 25A (application of Order to registered societies)—
(a) omit paragraph (2)(d),
(b) after paragraph (2)(f) insert—

"(g) Articles 11A to 11E are to be disregarded.", and

(c) omit paragraph (3).

10 Omit paragraph 65 of Schedule 2 to the Insolvency (Northern Ireland) Order 2005 (S.I. 2005/1455 (N.I. 10)).

SCHEDULE 9

Section 126

ABOLITION OF REQUIREMENTS TO HOLD MEETINGS; OPTED-OUT CREDITORS

PART 1

COMPANY INSOLVENCY

Introductory

1 The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

Company voluntary arrangements

2 In section 2(2) (nominee's report on company's proposal), for paragraphs (aa) and (b) substitute—

"(b) whether, in his opinion, the proposal should be considered by a meeting of the company and by the company's creditors, and

(c) if in his opinion it should, the date on which, and time and place at which, he proposes a meeting of the company should be held."

3 (1) Section 3 (summoning of meetings) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

(a) for the words from "that" to "summoned" substitute "under section 2(2) that the proposal should be considered by a meeting of the company and by the company's creditors";

(b) for the words from "directs)" to the end substitute "directs)—

(a) summon a meeting of the company to consider the proposal for the time, date and place proposed in the report, and

(b) seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposal."

(3) In subsection (2), for the words from "shall" to the end substitute "shall—

(a) summon a meeting of the company to consider the proposal for such time, date and place as he thinks fit, and

(b) seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposal."

(4) For subsection (3) substitute—

"(3) A decision of the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposal is to be made by a qualifying decision procedure.

(4) Notice of the qualifying decision procedure must be given to every creditor of the company of whose claim and address the person seeking the decision is aware."

(5) For the heading substitute "Consideration of proposal".

4 (1) Section 4 (decisions of meetings) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) This section applies where, under section 3—

(a) a meeting of the company is summoned to consider the proposed voluntary arrangement, and

(b) the company's creditors are asked to decide whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement.

(1A) The company and its creditors may approve the proposed voluntary arrangement with or without modifications."

(3) In subsection (3) for "A meeting so summoned shall not" substitute "Neither the company nor its creditors may".

(4) In subsection (4)—

(a) for "a meeting so summoned shall not" substitute "neither the company nor its creditors may";

(b) omit "the meeting may approve";

(c) after "such a proposal or modification" insert "may be approved".

(5) In subsection (5) for "each of the meetings" substitute "the meeting of the company and the qualifying decision procedure".

(6) In subsection (6) for "either" substitute "the company".

(7) After subsection (6) insert—

"(6A) After the company's creditors have decided whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement the person who sought the decision must—

(a) report the creditors' decision to the court, and

(b) immediately after reporting to the court, give notice of the creditors' decision to such persons as may be prescribed."

(8) In the heading, for "meetings" substitute "the company and its creditors".

5 (1) Section 4A (approval of arrangement) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a) for "both meetings summoned under section 3" substitute "the meeting of the company summoned under section 3 and by the company's creditors pursuant to that section";

(b) in paragraph (b) for "creditors' meeting summoned under" substitute "company's creditors pursuant to".

(3) In subsections (3), (4)(a) and (6)(a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "company's creditors".

6 (1) Section 5 (effect of approval) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "time the creditors decided to approve the voluntary arrangement";

(b) in paragraph (b)(i) for the words from "at that" to "it)" substitute "in the qualifying decision procedure by which the creditors' decision to approve the voluntary arrangement was made".

(3) In subsection (4)(a) after "4(6)" insert "and (6A)".

7 (1) Section 6 (challenge of decisions) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(b) for "either of the meetings" substitute "the meeting of the company, or in relation to the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(3) After subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) In this section—

(a) the "relevant qualifying decision procedure" means the qualifying decision procedure in which the company's creditors decide whether to approve a voluntary arrangement;

(b) references to a decision made in the relevant qualifying decision procedure include any other decision made in that qualifying decision procedure."

(4) In subsection (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a) for "either of the meetings" substitute "the meeting of the company or in the relevant qualifying decision procedure";

(b) in paragraph (aa) for "at the creditors' meeting" substitute "in the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(5) In subsection (3)(a) after "4(6)" insert "and (6A)".

(6) In subsection (3)(b)—

(a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "relevant qualifying decision procedure";

(b) for "the meeting" substitute "the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(7) In subsection (4), for "one or both" substitute "any".

(8) In subsection (4)(a), for "in question" substitute "of the company, or in the relevant qualifying decision procedure,".

(9) In subsection (4)(b)—

(a) for "further meetings" substitute "a further company meeting";

(b) for ", a further company or (as the case may be) creditors'" substitute "and relating to the company meeting, a further company".

(10) In subsection (4), after paragraph (b) insert—

"(c) direct any person—

(i) to seek a decision from the company's creditors (using a qualifying decision procedure) as to whether they approve any revised proposal the person who made the original proposal may make, or

(ii) in a case falling within subsection (1)(b) and relating to the relevant qualifying decision procedure, to seek a decision from the company's creditors (using a

qualifying decision procedure) as to whether they approve the original proposal."

(11) In subsection (5) for "for the summoning of meetings to consider" substitute "or (c) in relation to".

(12) In subsection (6)—
(a) after "meeting" insert "or relevant qualifying decision procedure";
(b) in paragraph (a) after "(4)(b)" insert "or (c)".

(13) In subsection (7)—
(a) the words from "a decision" to the end become paragraph (a);
(b) in that paragraph (a), after "at a" insert "company";
(c) after that paragraph (a) insert ", and
(b) a decision of the company's creditors made in the relevant qualifying decision procedure is not invalidated by any irregularity in relation to the relevant qualifying decision procedure."

8 In section 7(2)(a) for "given at one or both of the meetings summoned under" substitute "of the voluntary arrangement by the company or its creditors (or both) pursuant to".

9 (1) Schedule A1 (moratorium where directors propose voluntary arrangement) is amended as follows.

(2) For paragraph 6(2)(c) substitute—
"(c) the proposed voluntary arrangement should be considered by a meeting of the company and by the company's creditors."

(3) For paragraph 7(1)(e)(iii) substitute—
"(iii) the proposed voluntary arrangement should be considered by a meeting of the company and by the company's creditors."

(4) For paragraph 8(2) to (4) substitute—

"(2) A moratorium ends with the later of—
(a) the day on which the company meeting summoned under paragraph 29 is first held, and
(b) the day on which the company's creditors decide whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement,
unless it is extended under paragraph 32; but this is subject to the rest of this paragraph.

(3) In this paragraph the "initial period" means the period of 28 days beginning with the day on which the moratorium comes into force.

(3A) If the company meeting has not first met before the end of the initial period the moratorium ends at the end of that period, unless before the end of that period it is extended under paragraph 32.

(3B) If the company's creditors have not decided whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement before the end of the initial

period the moratorium ends at the end of that period, unless before the end of that period—

(a) the moratorium is extended under paragraph 32, or

(b) a meeting of the company's creditors is summoned in accordance with section 246ZE.

(3C) Where sub-paragraph (3B)(b) applies, the moratorium ends with the day on which the meeting of the company's creditors is first held, unless it is extended under paragraph 32.

(4) The moratorium ends at the end of the initial period if the nominee has not before the end of that period—

(a) summoned a meeting of the company, and

(b) sought a decision from the company's creditors,

as required by paragraph 29(1)."

(5) For paragraph 8(6)(c) substitute—

"(c) a decision of one or both of—

(i) the meeting of the company summoned under paragraph 29, or

(ii) the company's creditors."

(6) For the heading before paragraph 29 substitute "Duty to summon company meeting and seek creditors' decision".

(7) In paragraph 29(1), for the words from "shall" to the end substitute "shall—

(a) summon a meeting of the company to consider the proposed voluntary arrangement for such a time, date (within the period of time for the time being specified in paragraph 8(3)) and place as he thinks fit, and

(b) seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposed voluntary arrangement."

(8) For paragraph 29(2) substitute—

"(2) The decision of the company's creditors is to be made by a qualifying decision procedure.

(3) Notice of the qualifying decision procedure must be given to every creditor of the company of whose claim the nominee is aware."

(9) In the heading before paragraph 30, for "meetings" substitute "company meeting and qualifying decision procedure".

(10) In paragraph 30(1) for "meetings summoned under paragraph 29" substitute "company meeting summoned under paragraph 29 and the qualifying decision procedure instigated under that paragraph".

(11) In paragraph 30(2) for "A meeting so summoned" substitute "The company meeting summoned under paragraph 29".

(12) In paragraph 30(3) for "either" substitute "the company".

(13) After paragraph 30(3) insert—

"(4) After the company's creditors have decided whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement the nominee must—

(a) report the decision to the court, and

(b) immediately after reporting to the court, give notice of the decision to such persons as may be prescribed."

(14) For paragraph 31(1) substitute—

"(1) This paragraph applies where under paragraph 29—

(a) a meeting of the company is summoned to consider the proposed voluntary arrangement, and

(b) the nominee seeks a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposed voluntary arrangement.

(1A) The company and its creditors may approve the proposed voluntary arrangement with or without modifications."

(15) In paragraph 31(4) for "A meeting summoned under paragraph 29 shall not" substitute "Neither the company nor its creditors may".

(16) In paragraph 31(5) for "a meeting so summoned shall not" substitute "neither the company nor its creditors may".

(17) In paragraph 31(6) for "The meeting may approve such a proposal or modification" substitute "Such a proposal or modification may be approved".

(18) In paragraph 31(7)—

(a) for the words from "period" to "held" substitute "relevant period";

(b) for "those meetings" substitute "the company and its creditors".

(19) In paragraph 31, after sub-paragraph (7) insert—

"(7A) The "relevant period" is—

(a) in relation to the company, the period of seven days ending with the company meeting summoned under paragraph 29 being held;

(b) in relation to the company's creditors, the period of 14 days ending with the end of the period mentioned in paragraph 8(3).

(7B) Where under sub-paragraph (7) the nominee is given notice of proposed modifications, the nominee must seek a decision from the company's creditors (using a qualifying decision procedure) as to whether the proposed voluntary arrangement should be approved with those modifications."

(20) In paragraph 32(1), after "a" insert "company".

(21) In paragraph 32, after sub-paragraph (1) insert—

"(1A) Subject to sub-paragraph (2) the company's creditors may, by a qualifying decision procedure, decide to extend (or further extend) the moratorium, with or without conditions."

(22) For paragraph 32(2) substitute—

"(2) The moratorium may not be extended (or further extended) to a day later than the end of the period of two months beginning with the day after the last day of the period mentioned in paragraph 8(3)."

(23) In paragraph 32(3)—
(a) for "At any meeting where" substitute "Where";
(b) after "the meeting" insert "of the company or (as the case may be) inform the company's creditors".

(24) In paragraph 32(4)—
(a) after "a meeting" insert "of the company or informs the company's creditors,";
(b) after "resolve" insert ", or (as the case may be) the creditors by a qualifying decision procedure shall decide,".

(25) In paragraph 32(6) for "may resolve" substitute "of the company may resolve, and the creditors by a qualifying decision procedure may decide,".

(26) In paragraph 33(3) for "At any meeting where" substitute "Where".

(27) In paragraph 35, for sub-paragraphs (1) and (2) substitute—

"(1) This paragraph applies where in accordance with paragraph 32 a meeting of the company resolves, or the company's creditors decide, that the moratorium be extended (or further extended).

(1A) The meeting may resolve, and the company's creditors may by a qualifying decision procedure decide, that a committee be established to exercise the functions conferred on it by the meeting or (as the case may be) by the company's creditors.

(2) The meeting may resolve that such a committee be established only if—
(a) the nominee consents, and
(b) the meeting approves an estimate of the expenses to be incurred by the committee in the exercise of the proposed functions.

(2A) A decision of the company's creditors that such a committee be established is to be taken as made only if—
(a) the nominee consents, and
(b) the creditors by a qualifying decision procedure approve an estimate of the expenses to be incurred by the committee in the exercise of the proposed functions."

(28) In paragraph 36(2)—
(a) in paragraph (a) for "both meetings summoned under paragraph 29" substitute "the meeting of the company summoned under paragraph 29 and by the company's creditors";
(b) in paragraph (b) for "creditors' meeting summoned under that paragraph" substitute "company's creditors".

(29) In paragraph 36(3), (4)(a) and (5)(a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "company's creditors".

(30) In paragraph 37(2)—
(a) in paragraph (a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "time the creditors decided to approve the voluntary arrangement";
(b) in paragraph (b)(i) for the words from "at that" to "it)" substitute "in the qualifying decision procedure by which the creditors' decision to approve the voluntary arrangement was made".

(31) In paragraph 37(5)(a)—
(a) omit "of the meetings";
(b) after "30(3)" insert "and (4)".

(32) In paragraph 38(1)—
(a) in paragraph (a) for the words from "approved" to "effect" substitute "which has taken effect under paragraph 37";
(b) in paragraph (b) for "either of those meetings" substitute "the meeting of the company summoned under paragraph 29, or in relation to the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(33) After paragraph 38(1) insert—

"(1A) In this paragraph—
(a) the "relevant qualifying decision procedure" means the qualifying decision procedure in which the creditors decided whether to approve the voluntary arrangement;
(b) references to a decision made in the relevant qualifying decision procedure include any other decision made in that qualifying decision procedure."

(34) In paragraph 38(2)—
(a) in paragraph (a) for "either of the meetings" substitute "the meeting of the company or in the relevant qualifying decision procedure";
(b) in paragraph (b) for "at the creditors' meeting" substitute "in the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(35) In paragraph 38(3)(a) after "30(3)" insert "and (4)".

(36) In paragraph 38(3)(b)—
(a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "relevant qualifying decision procedure";
(b) for "the meeting" substitute "the relevant qualifying decision procedure".

(37) In paragraph 38(4)(a)(ii) for "in question" substitute "of the company, or in the relevant qualifying decision procedure,".

(38) In paragraph 38(4)(b)—
(a) for "further meetings" substitute "a further company meeting";
(b) after "(1)(b)" insert "and relating to the company meeting";
(c) omit "or (as the case may be) creditors'".

(39) In paragraph 38(4), after paragraph (b) insert—

"(c) direct any person—
(i) to seek a decision from the company's creditors (using a qualifying decision procedure) as to whether they approve any revised proposal for a voluntary arrangement which the directors may make, or
(ii) in a case falling within sub-paragraph (1)(b) and relating to the relevant qualifying decision procedure, to seek a decision from the company's creditors (using a qualifying decision procedure) as to whether they approve the original proposal."

(40) In paragraph 38(5), after "(4)(b)(i)" insert "or (c)(i)".

(41) In paragraph 38(6) and (7)(a), after "(4)(b)" insert "or (c)".

(42) In paragraph 38(9)—

(a) the words from "a decision" to the end become paragraph (a);

(b) in that paragraph (a), after "at a" insert "company";

(c) after that paragraph (a) insert ", and

(b) a decision of the company's creditors made in the relevant qualifying decision procedure is not invalidated by any irregularity in relation to the relevant qualifying decision procedure."

(43) In paragraph 39(1) for the words from "approved" to the end substitute "has taken effect under paragraph 37."

(44) In paragraph 40(5)—

(a) in paragraph (c), omit "creditors or";

(b) after paragraph (c) insert—

"(ca) require a decision of the company's creditors to be sought (using a qualifying decision procedure) on such matters as the court may direct,".

(45) For paragraph 44(8) substitute—

"(8) The appropriate regulator must be given notice of any qualifying decision procedure by which a decision of the company's creditors is sought for the purposes of this Schedule.

(8A) The appropriate regulator, or a person appointed by the appropriate regulator, may in the way provided for by the rules participate in (but not vote in) any qualifying decision procedure by which a decision of the company's creditors is sought for the purposes of this Schedule."

(46) Omit paragraph 44(9)(a).

(47) In paragraph 44(17A)(b) for "sub-paragraph" substitute "sub-paragraphs (8A) and".

Administration

10 (1) Schedule B1 (administration) is amended as follows.

(2) In paragraph 49(4)(b), after "company" insert ", other than an opted-out creditor,".

(3) Omit paragraph 50 and the heading before it.

(4) For the heading before paragraph 51 substitute "Consideration of administrator's proposals by creditors".

(5) In paragraph 51, for sub-paragraphs (1) to (3) substitute—

"(1) The administrator must seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposals set out in the statement made under paragraph 49(1).

(2) The initial decision date for that decision must be within the period of 10 weeks beginning with the day on which the company enters administration.

(3) The "initial decision date" for that decision—

(a) if the decision is initially sought using the deemed consent procedure, is the date on which a decision will be made if the creditors by that procedure approve the proposals, and

(b) if the decision is initially sought using a qualifying decision procedure, is the date on or before which a decision will be made if it is made by that qualifying decision procedure (assuming that date does not change after the procedure is instigated)."

(6) In paragraph 52(2), for the words from "summon" to "requested" substitute "seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposals set out in the statement made under paragraph 49(1) if requested to do so".

(7) For paragraph 52(3) substitute—

"(3) Where a decision is sought by virtue of sub-paragraph (2) the initial decision date (as defined in paragraph 51(3)) must be within the prescribed period."

(8) For the heading before paragraph 53 substitute "Creditors' decision".

(9) In paragraph 53, for sub-paragraph (1) substitute—

"(1) The company's creditors may approve the administrator's proposals—

(a) without modification, or

(b) with modification to which the administrator consents."

(10) In paragraph 53(2)—

(a) for "After the conclusion of an initial creditors' meeting the" substitute "The";

(b) after "taken" insert "by the company's creditors".

(11) In paragraph 54(1)(a) for "at an initial creditors' meeting" substitute "by the company's creditors".

(12) Omit paragraph 54(2)(a).

(13) In paragraph 54(2)(b)—

(a) omit "with the notice of the meeting sent";

(b) after "creditor" insert "who is not an opted-out creditor".

(14) For paragraph 54(2)(d) substitute—

"(d) seek a decision from the company's creditors as to whether they approve the proposed revision."

(15) For paragraph 54(5) substitute—

"(5) The company's creditors may approve the proposed revision—

(a) without modification, or

(b) with modification to which the administrator consents."

(16) In paragraph 54(6)—

(a) for "After the conclusion of a creditors' meeting the" substitute "The";

(b) after "taken" insert "by the company's creditors".

(17) For paragraph 55(1) substitute—

"(1) This paragraph applies where an administrator—

(a) reports to the court under paragraph 53 that a company's creditors have failed to approve the administrator's proposals, or

(b) reports to the court under paragraph 54 that a company's creditors have failed to approve a revision of the administrator's proposals."

(18) In the heading before paragraph 56, for "meetings" substitute "decisions".

(19) In paragraph 56(1), for "summon a creditors' meeting"—

(a) in the first place, substitute "seek a decision from the company's creditors on a matter";

(b) in the second place, substitute "do so".

(20) In paragraph 56(2), for "summon a creditors' meeting" substitute "seek a decision from the company's creditors on a matter".

(21) In paragraph 57(1), for "A creditors' meeting may" substitute "The company's creditors may, in accordance with the rules,".

(22) Omit paragraph 58 and the heading before it.

(23) In paragraph 62, for the words from "may" to the end substitute "may—

(a) call a meeting of members of the company;

(b) seek a decision on any matter from the company's creditors."

(24) For paragraph 74(4)(c) substitute—

"(c) require a decision of the company's creditors to be sought on a matter;".

(25) For paragraph 78(1)(b) substitute—

"(b) if the company has unsecured debts, the unsecured creditors of the company."

(26) For paragraph 78(2)(b)(ii) substitute—

"(ii) the preferential creditors of the company."

(27) After paragraph 78(2) insert—

"(2A) Whether the company's unsecured creditors or preferential creditors consent is to be determined by the administrator seeking a decision from those creditors as to whether they consent."

(28) Omit paragraph 78(3).

(29) In paragraph 79(2)(c) for "a creditors' meeting requires him to" substitute "the company's creditors decide that he must".

(30) In paragraph 80(4) after "company" insert ", other than an opted-out creditor,".

(31) In paragraph 83(5)(b) after "creditor" insert ", other than an opted-out creditor,".

(32) In paragraph 83(8)(d) omit "98,".

(33) In paragraph 84(5)(b) after "creditor" insert ", other than an opted-out creditor,".

(34) In the heading before paragraph 97, for "meeting" substitute "decision".

(35) For paragraph 97(2) and (3) substitute—

"(2) The administrator may be replaced by a decision of the creditors made by a qualifying decision procedure.

(3) The decision has effect only if, before the decision is made, the new administrator has consented to act in writing."

(36) In paragraph 98(2)(b), for the second "resolution" substitute "decision".

(37) For paragraph 98(3)(b)(ii) substitute—

"(ii) the preferential creditors of the company."

(38) After paragraph 98(3) insert—

"(3A) In a case where the administrator is removed from office, a decision of the creditors for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(b), or of the preferential creditors for the purposes of sub-paragraph (2)(ba), must be made by a qualifying decision procedure."

(39) In paragraph 108(1) omit ", 50(1)(b)".

(40) For paragraph 108(2)(b) substitute—

"(b) if the company has unsecured debts, the unsecured creditors of the company."

(41) For paragraph 108(3)(b)(ii) substitute—

"(ii) the preferential creditors of the company."

(42) After paragraph 108(3) insert—

"(3A) Whether the company's unsecured creditors or preferential creditors consent is to be determined by the administrator seeking a decision from those creditors as to whether they consent."

(43) Omit paragraph 108(4).

(44) In paragraph 111, omit the definitions of "correspondence" and "creditors' meeting".

11 (1) Schedule 10 (offences) is amended as follows.

(2) In the entry for Schedule B1, paragraph 51(5), in column 2, for "arrange initial creditors' meeting" substitute "seek creditors' decision".

(3) In the entry for Schedule B1, paragraph 53(3), in column 2, for "at initial creditors' meeting" substitute "by creditors".

(4) In the entry for Schedule B1, paragraph 54(7), in column 2, for the words from "decision" to "consider" insert "creditors' decision on".

(5) In the entry for Schedule B1, paragraph 56(2), in column 2, for "summon creditors' meeting" substitute "seek creditors' decision".

Receivers and managers

12 (1) Section 48 (report by administrative receiver - England and Wales) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), after "such creditors" insert ", other than opted-out creditors,".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a), after "company" insert ", other than opted-out creditors,";

(b) omit the words after paragraph (b).

(4) Omit subsection (3).

13 In section 49(1) (committee of creditors - England and Wales), for the words from the beginning to "fit" substitute "Where an administrative receiver has sent or published a report as mentioned in section 48(2) the company's unsecured creditors may, in accordance with the rules".

14 (1) Section 67 (report by receiver - Scotland) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), after "such creditors" insert ", other than opted-out creditors,".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a), after "company" insert ", other than opted-out creditors";

(b) omit the words after paragraph (b).

(4) Omit subsection (3).

15 In section 68(1) (committee of creditors - Scotland), for the words from the beginning to "fit" substitute "Where a receiver has sent or published a report as mentioned in section 67(2) the company's unsecured creditors may, in accordance with the rules".

Winding-up

16 In section 92A(1) (members' voluntary winding-up in England and Wales: progress report to company) for "sections 96 and 102" substitute "section 96".

17 In section 93(1) (members' voluntary winding-up in Scotland: company meeting at year's end) for "sections 96 and 102" substitute "section 96".

18 For section 94 (members' voluntary winding up: final meeting of company prior to dissolution) substitute—

"94 Final account prior to dissolution

(1) As soon as the company's affairs are fully wound up the liquidator must make up an account of the winding up, showing how it has been conducted and the company's property has been disposed of.

(2) The liquidator must send a copy of the account to the members of the company before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which the account is made up.

(3) The liquidator must send a copy of the account to the registrar of companies before the end of that period (but not before sending it to the members of the company).

(4) If the liquidator does not comply with subsection (2) the liquidator is liable to a fine.

(5) If the liquidator does not comply with subsection (3) the liquidator is liable to a fine and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine."

19 (1) Section 95 (effect of company's insolvency) is amended as follows.

(2) After subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) The liquidator must before the end of the period of 7 days beginning with the day after the day on which the liquidator formed that opinion—

(a) make out a statement in the prescribed form as to the affairs of the company, and

(b) send it to the company's creditors."

(3) Omit subsections (2) to (3) and (5) to (7).

(4) After subsection (4A) insert—

"(4B) The company's creditors may in accordance with the rules nominate a person to be liquidator.

(4C) The liquidator must in accordance with the rules seek such a nomination from the company's creditors."

(5) In subsection (8), for "this section" substitute "subsections (1) to (4A)".

20 (1) For section 96 (conversion to creditors' voluntary winding up) substitute—

"96 Conversion to creditors' voluntary winding up

(1) The winding up becomes a creditors' voluntary winding up as from the day on which—

(a) the company's creditors under section 95 nominate a person to be liquidator, or

(b) the procedure by which the company's creditors were to have made such a nomination concludes without a nomination having been made.

(2) As from that day this Act has effect as if the directors' declaration under section 89 had not been made.

(3) The liquidator in the creditors' voluntary winding up is to be the person nominated by the company's creditors under section 95 or, where no person has been so nominated, the existing liquidator.

(4) In the case of the creditors nominating a person other than the existing liquidator any director, member or creditor of the company may, within 7 days after the date on which the nomination was made by the creditors, apply to the court for an order either—

(a) directing that the existing liquidator is to be liquidator instead of or jointly with the person nominated by the creditors, or

(b) appointing some other person to be liquidator instead of the person nominated by the creditors.

(5) The "existing liquidator" is the person who is liquidator immediately before the winding up becomes a creditors' voluntary winding up."

(2) In section 96 (as inserted by sub-paragraph (1)), after subsection (4) insert—

"(4A) The court shall grant an application under subsection (4) made by the holder of a qualifying floating charge in respect of the company's property (within the meaning of paragraph 14 of Schedule B1) unless the court thinks it right to refuse the application because of the particular circumstances of the case."

21 In section 97(2) (application of Chapter 4), for "98 and 99" substitute "99 and 100".

22 Omit section 98 (meeting of creditors).

23 (1) Section 99 (directors to lay statement of affairs before creditors) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) The directors of the company must, before the end of the period of 7 days beginning with the day after the day on which the company passes a resolution for voluntary winding up—

(a) make out a statement in the prescribed form as to the affairs of the company, and

(b) send the statement to the company's creditors."

(3) For subsection (3) substitute—

"(3) If the directors without reasonable excuse fail to comply with subsection (1), (2) or (2A), they are guilty of an offence and liable to a fine."

24 For section 100(1) (appointment of liquidator) substitute—

"(1) The company may nominate a person to be liquidator at the company meeting at which the resolution for voluntary winding up is passed.

(1A) The company's creditors may in accordance with the rules nominate a person to be liquidator.

(1B) The directors of the company must in accordance with the rules seek such a nomination from the company's creditors."

25 (1) Section 101 (appointment of liquidation committee) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) The creditors may in accordance with the rules appoint a committee ("the liquidation committee") of not more than 5 persons to exercise the functions conferred on it by or under this Act."

(3) In subsection (3)—

(a) for "resolve" (in both places) substitute "decide";

(b) for "the persons mentioned in the resolution" (in both places) substitute "those persons".

26 Omit section 102 (creditors' meeting where winding up converted under section 96).

27 In section 104A (progress report to company and creditors at year's end (England and Wales)), in subsection (1)(b)(i), after "creditors" insert ", other than opted-out creditors".

28 In section 105(4) (meetings of company and creditors at each year's end (Scotland)) for "creditors meeting under section 95 is held" substitute "liquidator sends a statement of affairs to the company's creditors under section 95(1A)(b)".

29 For section 106 (creditors' voluntary winding-up: final meetings of company and creditors prior to dissolution) substitute—

"106 Final account prior to dissolution

(1) As soon as the company's affairs are fully wound up the liquidator must make up an account of the winding up, showing how it has been conducted and the company's property has been disposed of.

(2) The liquidator must, before the end of the period of 14 days beginning with the day on which the account is made up—
  (a) send a copy of the account to the company's members,
  (b) send a copy of the account to the company's creditors (other than opted-out creditors), and
  (c) give the company's creditors (other than opted-out creditors) a notice explaining the effect of section 173(2)(e) and how they may object to the liquidator's release.

(3) The liquidator must during the relevant period send to the registrar of companies—
  (a) a copy of the account, and
  (b) a statement of whether any of the company's creditors objected to the liquidator's release.

(4) The relevant period is the period of 7 days beginning with the day after the last day of the period prescribed by the rules as the period within which the creditors may object to the liquidator's release.

(5) If the liquidator does not comply with subsection (2) the liquidator is liable to a fine.

(6) If the liquidator does not comply with subsection (3) the liquidator is liable to a fine and, for continued contravention, a daily default fine."

30 In section 114(2) (powers of directors in voluntary winding up where no liquidator nominated by company)—
  (a) omit "98 (creditors' meeting) and";
  (b) after "affairs)" insert "and 100(1B) (nomination of liquidator by creditors)".

31 (1) Section 136 (functions of official receiver in relation to office of liquidator) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (4) for "summon separate meetings of" substitute "in accordance with the rules seek nominations from".

(3) In subsection (5)(a) and (c), omit "to summon meetings".

(4) In subsection (6), for "summon meetings of" substitute "seek nominations from".

32 (1) Section 137 (appointment by Secretary of State) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)—

(a) for "meetings are held" substitute "nominations are sought from the company's creditors and contributories";

(b) omit "of those meetings".

(3) In subsection (5), for the words from "shall" to the end substitute "must explain the procedure for establishing a liquidation committee under section 141."

33 (1) Section 138 (appointment of liquidator in Scotland) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (3), for "summon separate meetings of" substitute "in accordance with the rules seek nominations from".

(3) In subsection (4), for the words from "summon under" to the second "meeting of" substitute "seek a nomination from the company's contributories under subsection (3), he may seek a nomination only from".

(4) In subsection (5)—

(a) for "one or more meetings are held" substitute "a nomination is sought from the company's creditors, or nominations are sought from the company's creditors and contributories,";

(b) for "by the meeting or meetings" substitute "as a result".

34 (1) Section 139 (choice of liquidator at meetings of creditors and contributories) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for "separate meetings of the company's creditors and contributories are summoned" substitute "nominations are sought from the company's creditors and contributories".

(3) In subsection (2) for "at their respective meetings may" substitute "may in accordance with the rules".

(4) In the heading, for "at meetings of" substitute "by".

35 In section 140(3) (appointment of liquidator by court following administration or voluntary arrangement), for the words from "he" to the end substitute "section 136(5)(a) and (b) does not apply."

36 In section 141 (liquidation committee: England and Wales) for subsections (1) to (3) substitute—

"(1) This section applies where a winding up order has been made by the court in England and Wales.

(2) If both the company's creditors and the company's contributories decide that a liquidation committee should be established, a liquidation committee is to be established in accordance with the rules.

(3) If only the company's creditors, or only the company's contributories, decide that a liquidation committee should be established, a liquidation committee is to be established in accordance with the rules unless the court orders otherwise.

(3A) A "liquidation committee" is a committee having such functions as are conferred on it by or under this Act.

(3B) The liquidator must seek a decision from the company's creditors and contributories as to whether a liquidation committee should be established if requested, in accordance with the rules, to do so by one-tenth in value of the company's creditors.

(3C) Subsection (3B) does not apply where the liquidator is the official receiver."

37 (1) Section 142 (liquidation committee (Scotland)) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsections (1) to (4) substitute—

"(1) This section applies where a winding up order has been made by the court in Scotland.

(2) If both the company's creditors and the company's contributories decide that a liquidation committee should be established, a liquidation committee is to be established in accordance with the rules.

(3) If only the company's creditors, or only the company's contributories, decide that a liquidation committee should be established, a liquidation committee is to be established in accordance with the rules unless the court orders otherwise.

(4) A liquidator appointed by the court other than under section 139(4)(a) must seek a decision from the company's creditors and contributories as to whether a liquidation committee should be established if requested, in accordance with the rules, to do so by one-tenth in value of the company's creditors."

(3) In subsection (6), for the words from "In" to "has" substitute "A "liquidation committee" is a committee having the powers and duties conferred and imposed on it by this Act, and".

38 For section 146 (compulsory winding-up - duty to summon final meeting) substitute—

"146 Final account

(1) This section applies where a company is being wound up by the court and the liquidator is not the official receiver.

(2) If it appears to the liquidator that the winding up of the company is for practical purposes complete the liquidator must make up an account of the winding up, showing how it has been conducted and the company's property has been disposed of.

(3) The liquidator must—

(a) send a copy of the account to the company's creditors (other than opted-out creditors), and

(b) give the company's creditors (other than opted-out creditors) a notice explaining the effect of section 174(4)(d) and how they may object to the liquidator's release.

(4) The liquidator must during the relevant period send to the court and the registrar of companies—

(a) a copy of the account, and

(b) a statement of whether any of the company's creditors objected to the liquidator's release.

(5) The relevant period is the period of 7 days beginning with the day after the last day of the period prescribed by the rules as the period within which the creditors may object to the liquidator's release."

39 In section 160(1) (delegation of court's powers to liquidator (England and Wales)) for paragraph (a) substitute—

"(a) the seeking of decisions on any matter from creditors and contributories,".

40 (1) Section 166 (liquidator's powers and duties in creditors' voluntary winding up) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), for the words from "during" to the end substitute "before—

(a) the company's creditors under section 100 nominate a person to be liquidator, or

(b) the procedure by which the company's creditors were to have made such a nomination concludes without a nomination having been made."

(3) Omit subsection (4).

(4) In subsection (5), for the words from the beginning to the end of paragraph (b) substitute "If the directors fail to comply with—

(a) section 99(1), (2) or (2A), or

(b) section 100(1B),".

41 In section 168 (liquidator's supplementary powers: England and Wales) for subsection (2) substitute—

"(2) The liquidator may seek a decision on any matter from the company's creditors or contributories; and must seek a decision on a matter—

(a) from the company's creditors, if requested to do so by one-tenth in value of the creditors;

(b) from the company's contributories, if requested to do so by one-tenth in value of the contributories."

42 (1) Section 171 (removal of liquidator in voluntary winding up) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(b), for "general meeting of the company's creditors summoned" substitute "decision of the company's creditors made by a qualifying decision procedure instigated".

(3) For subsection (3) substitute—

"(3) Where the liquidator in a members' voluntary winding up was appointed by the court under section 108, a meeting such as is mentioned in subsection (2)(a) shall be summoned only if—

(a) the liquidator thinks fit,

(b) the court so directs, or

(c) the meeting is requested in accordance with the rules by members representing not less than one-half of the total voting rights of all the members having at the date of the request a right to vote at the meeting.

(3A) Where the liquidator in a creditors' voluntary winding up was appointed by the court under section 108, a qualifying decision procedure such as is mentioned in subsection (2)(b) is to be instigated only if—

(a) the liquidator thinks fit,

(b) the court so directs, or

(c) it is requested in accordance with the rules by not less than one-half in value of the company's creditors."

(4) For subsection (6) substitute—

"(6) In the case of a members' voluntary winding up where the liquidator has produced an account of the winding up under section 94 (final account), the liquidator vacates office as soon as the liquidator has complied with section 94(3) (requirement to send final account to registrar).

(7) In the case of a creditors' voluntary winding up where the liquidator has produced an account of the winding up under section 106 (final account), the liquidator vacates office as soon as the liquidator has complied with section 106(3) (requirement to send final account etc. to registrar)."

43 (1) Section 172 (removal of liquidator in compulsory winding up) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), for "general meeting of the company's creditors summoned" substitute "decision of the company's creditors made by a qualifying decision procedure instigated".

(3) In subsection (3)—

(a) in paragraph (a) omit "a meeting of";

(b) for the words from "a general meeting" to "the meeting" substitute "a qualifying decision procedure such as is mentioned in subsection (2) shall be instigated only if the liquidator thinks fit, the court so directs, or it".

(4) For subsection (8) substitute—

"(8) Where the liquidator has produced an account of the winding up under section 146 (final account), the liquidator vacates office as soon as the liquidator has complied with section 146(4) (requirement to send account etc. to registrar and to court)."

44 (1) Section 173 (release of liquidator in voluntary winding up) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—

"(a) in the following cases, the time at which notice is given to the registrar of companies in accordance with the rules that the person has ceased to hold office—

(i) the person has been removed from office by a general meeting of the company,

(ii) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors and the company's creditors have not decided against his release,

(iii) the person has died;

(b) in the following cases, such time as the Secretary of State may, on the application of the person, determine—

(i) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors and the company's creditors have decided against his release,

(ii) the person has been removed from office by the court,

(iii) the person has vacated office under section 171(4);".

(3) In subsection (2)(d), for "(6)(a)" substitute "(6)".

(4) In subsection (2), for paragraph (e) substitute—

"(e) in the case of a person who has vacated office under section 171(7)—

(i) if any of the company's creditors objected to the person's release before the end of the period for so objecting prescribed by the rules, such time as the Secretary of State may, on an application by that person, determine, and

(ii) otherwise, the time at which the person vacated office."

(5) After subsection (2) insert—

"(2A) Where the person is removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors, any decision of the company's creditors as to whether the person should have his release must be made by a qualifying decision procedure."

45 (1) Section 174 (release of liquidator in compulsory winding up) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (2)(a), for "a general meeting of" substitute "the company's".

(3) In subsection (4), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute—

"(a) in the following cases, the time at which notice is given to the court in accordance with the rules that the person has ceased to hold office—

(i) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors and the company's creditors have not decided against his release,

(ii) the person has died;

(b) in the following cases, such time as the Secretary of State may, on the application of the person, determine—

(i) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors and the company's creditors have decided against his release;

(ii) the person has been removed from office by the court or the Secretary of State;

(iii) the person has vacated office under section 172(5) or (7);".

(4) In subsection (4)(d), for sub-paragraphs (i) and (ii) substitute—

"(i) if any of the company's creditors objected to the person's release before the end of the period for so objecting prescribed by the rules, such time as the Secretary of State may, on an application by that person, determine, and

(ii) otherwise, the time at which the person vacated office."

(5) After subsection (4) insert—

"(4ZA) Where the person is removed from office by a decision of the company's creditors, any decision of the company's creditors as to whether the person should have his release must be made by a qualifying decision procedure."

46 Omit section 194 (resolutions passed at adjourned meetings).

47 (1) Section 195 (meetings to ascertain wishes of creditors or contributories) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(b), for the words from "meetings" to the end substitute "qualifying decision procedures to be instigated or the deemed consent procedure to be used in accordance with any directions given by the court, and appoint a person to report the result to the court".

(3) In the heading, for "Meetings" substitute "Court's powers".

48 (1) Section 201 (voluntary winding up - dissolution) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)—

(a) omit "and return";

(b) after "or" insert "his final account and statement under".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) for "and return" substitute ", or the account and statement,";

(b) after "register" insert "it or";

(c) for "the return" substitute "the account".

49 In section 202(3) (early dissolution in England and Wales) after "creditors" insert ", other than opted-out creditors,".

50 In section 204(2) (early dissolution: Scotland) for "meeting or meetings" substitute "liquidator has been appointed".

51 (1) Section 205 (compulsory winding up - dissolution) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1)(a) substitute—

"(a) a final account and statement sent under section 146(4) (final account);".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) after "receipt of" insert "the final account and statement or";

(b) after "register" insert "them or";

(c) omit the second "of the notice".

52 In section 208(2) (misconduct in course of winding up), for "at any meeting" substitute "in connection with any qualifying decision procedure or deemed consent procedure".

53 (1) Schedule 10 (offences) is amended as follows.

(2) For the entries for section 94(4) and (6) substitute—

"94(4)	Liquidator failing to send to company members a copy of account of winding up	Summary	Level 3 on the standard scale	
94(5)	Liquidator failing to send to registrar a copy of account of winding up	Summary	Level 3 on the standard scale	One tenth of level 3 on the standard scale."

(3) In the entry for section 95(8), in column 2, for "s. 95" substitute "s. 95(1) to (4A)".

(4) Omit the entry for section 98(6).

(5) In the entry for section 99(3), in column 2, for the words from "attend" to "meeting" substitute "send statement in prescribed form to creditors".

(6) For the entries for section 106(4) and (6) substitute—

"106(5)	Liquidator failing to send to company members and creditors a copy of account of winding up	Summary	Level 3 on the standard scale	
106(6)	Liquidator failing to send to registrar a copy of account of winding up	Summary	Level 3 on the standard scale	One tenth of level 3 on the standard scale."

Other provision

54 (1) Section 246A (remote attendance at meetings) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words from "applies to" to the end substitute "applies to any meeting of the members of a company summoned by the office-holder under this Act or the rules, other than a meeting of the members of the company in a members' voluntary winding up."

(3) In subsection (8) for "creditors, members or contributories" substitute "members".

(4) In subsection (9)(c), for the words from "made" to "of members," substitute "made".

55 In section 387(2) and (2A) (definition of "relevant date") for "meetings to consider" substitute "consideration of".

56 In section 433(3)(a) (admissibility of evidence in statement of affairs etc)—

(a) omit "98(6),";

(b) for "99(3)(a)" substitute "99(3)".

57 (1) Section 434B (representation of companies at meetings) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for paragraph (a) substitute—

"(a) in a qualifying decision procedure, held in pursuance of this Act or of rules made under it, by which a decision is sought from the creditors of a company, or".

(3) In the heading, after "corporations" insert "in decision procedures and".

58 In Schedule 8, after paragraph 9 insert—

"9A Provision about how a company's creditors may nominate a person to be liquidator, including in the case of a voluntary winding up provision conferring functions on the directors of the company."

59 (1) Paragraph 10 of Schedule 8 (power to make provision about creditors committees etc) is amended as follows.

(2) In sub-paragraph (1)—

(a) after "to the" insert "establishment,";

(b) for "established under" substitute "provided for by".

(3) In sub-paragraph (2)—

(a) in paragraph (a), omit "a meeting of" in both places;

(b) in paragraph (b), for "a meeting of" substitute "seeking a decision from".

PART 2

INDIVIDUAL INSOLVENCY

Introductory

60 The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended in accordance with this Part of this Schedule.

Individual voluntary arrangements

61 (1) Section 256 (nominee's report on debtor's proposal) is amended as follows.

(2) At the end of subsection (1)(a) insert "and".

(3) In subsection (1)(aa)—

(a) for "a meeting of the debtor's creditors should be summoned to" substitute "the debtor's creditors should";

(b) omit ", and".

(4) Omit subsection (1)(b).

(5) In subsection (5) for "a meeting of the debtor's creditors should be summoned to" substitute "the debtor's creditors should".

(6) In subsection (6), for "a meeting of the debtor's creditors to be summoned" substitute "the debtor's creditors".

62 (1) Section 256A (nominee's report on debtor's proposal) is amended as follows.

(2) At the end of subsection (3)(a) insert "and".

(3) In subsection (3)(b)—

(a) for "a meeting of the debtor's creditors should be summoned to" substitute "the debtor's creditors should";

(b) omit ", and".

(4) Omit subsection (3)(c).

63 In the heading before section 257, for "meeting" substitute "decisions".

64 (1) Section 257 (summoning of creditors' meeting) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsections (1) and (2) substitute—

"(1) This section applies where it has been reported to the court under section 256 or to the debtor's creditors under section 256A that the debtor's creditors should consider the debtor's proposal.

(2) The nominee (or the nominee's replacement under section 256(3) or 256A(4)) must seek a decision from the debtor's creditors as to whether they approve the proposed voluntary arrangement (unless, in the case of a report to which section 256 applies, the court otherwise directs).

(2A) The decision is to be made by a creditors' decision procedure.

(2B) Notice of the creditors' decision procedure must be given to every creditor of the debtor of whose claim and address the nominee (or the nominee's replacement) is aware."

(3) In subsection (3)(b), for "meeting" substitute "creditors' decision procedure".

(4) For the heading substitute "Consideration of debtor's proposal by creditors".

65 (1) Section 258 (decision of creditors' meeting) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) This section applies where under section 257 the debtor's creditors are asked to decide whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement."

(3) In subsections (2), (4) and (5) for "meeting" (in each place) substitute "creditors".

(4) In subsection (2)—
  (a) after "with" insert "or without";
  (b) for "do so" insert "approve it with modifications".

(5) Omit subsection (6).

(6) For the heading substitute "Approval of debtor's proposal".

66 (1) Section 259 (report of decisions to court) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) When pursuant to section 257 the debtor's creditors have decided whether to approve the debtor's proposal (with or without modifications), the nominee (or the nominee's replacement under section 256(3) or 256A(4)) must—
  (a) give notice of the creditors' decision to such persons as may be prescribed, and
  (b) where the creditors considered the debtor's proposal pursuant to a report to the court under section 256(1)(aa), report the creditors' decision to the court."

(3) In subsection (2), for "meeting has" substitute "creditors have".

67 (1) Section 260 (effect of approval) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1) for "the meeting summoned under section 257 approves" substitute "pursuant to section 257 the debtor's creditors decide to approve".

(3) In subsection (2)—
  (a) in paragraph (a) for "at the meeting" substitute "at the time the creditors decided to approve the proposal";
  (b) in paragraph (b)(i) for the words from "at the" to "it)" substitute "in the creditors' decision procedure by which the decision to approve the proposal was made".

(4) In subsection (4) for "meeting" substitute "decision".

68 (1) Section 261 (additional effect on undischarged bankrupt) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(a), for "the creditors' meeting summoned under section 257 approves" substitute "pursuant to section 257 the debtor's creditors decide to approve".

(3) In subsection (3)(a), for "decision of the creditors' meeting" substitute "creditors' decision".

69 (1) Section 262 (challenge of meeting's decision) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(a), for "a creditors' meeting summoned under" substitute "a decision of the debtor's creditors pursuant to".

(3) In subsection (1)(b), for "at or in relation to such a meeting" substitute "in relation to a creditors' decision procedure instigated under that section".

(4) In subsection (2)(b)(i), for "at the creditors' meeting" substitute "in the creditors' decision procedure".

(5) In subsection (3)(b)—
  (a) for "creditors' meeting" substitute "creditors' decision procedure";
  (b) for "the meeting had taken place" substitute "a decision as to whether to approve the proposed voluntary arrangement had been made".

(6) In subsection (4)(a) for "the meeting" substitute "a decision of the debtor's creditors".

(7) For subsection (4)(b) substitute—
  "(b) direct any person to seek a decision from the debtor's creditors (using a creditors' decision procedure) as to whether they approve—
    (i) any revised proposal the debtor may make, or
    (ii) in a case falling within subsection (1)(b), the debtor's original proposal."

(8) In subsection (5)—
  (a) for "for the summoning of a meeting to consider" substitute "in relation to";
  (b) for "given at the previous meeting" substitute "previously given by the debtor's creditors".

(9) In subsection (7), for "meeting", in each place, substitute "decision".

(10) In subsection (8), for the words from "an approval" to the end substitute "the approval of a voluntary arrangement by a decision of the debtor's creditors pursuant to section 257 is not invalidated by any irregularity in relation to the creditors' decision procedure by which the decision was made."

(11) In the heading for "meeting's" substitute "creditors'".

70 In section 262B(1) (prosecution of delinquent debtors), for "creditors' meeting summoned under" substitute "decision of the debtor's creditors pursuant to".

71 In section 262C (arrangements coming to an end prematurely), for "creditors' meeting summoned under" substitute "decision of the debtor's creditors pursuant to".

72 In section 263(1) (implementation and supervision of approved voluntary arrangement), for "creditors' meeting summoned under" substitute "decision of the debtor's creditors pursuant to".

Bankruptcy

73 In section 276(1)(b)(ii) (default in connection with voluntary arrangement) for "at or in connection with a meeting summoned" substitute "in connection with a creditors' decision procedure instigated".

74 In section 283(4)(a) (definition of bankrupt's estate), for the words from "a meeting" to "held" substitute "the trustee of that estate has vacated office under section 298(8)".

75 In section 287(3)(c) (powers of interim receiver), for "summon a general meeting of" substitute "seek a decision on a matter from".

76 In section 296(5) (trustee to give notice relating to creditors' committees), for paragraphs (a) and (b) substitute "explain the procedure for establishing a creditors' committee under section 301."

77 (1) Section 298 (trustee's vacation of office) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for "general meeting of the bankrupt's creditors summoned" substitute "decision of the bankrupt's creditors made by a creditors' decision procedure instigated".

(3) In subsection (4)—
- (a) for "general meeting of the bankrupt's creditors shall be summoned" substitute "creditors' decision procedure may be instigated";
- (b) for "replacing" substitute "removing";
- (c) in paragraph (c)—
  - (i) omit "the meeting is requested by";
  - (ii) after "bankrupt's creditors" insert "so requests,".

(4) After subsection (4) insert—

"(4A) Where the bankrupt's creditors decide to remove a trustee, they may in accordance with the rules appoint another person as trustee in his place.

(4B) Where the decision to remove a trustee is made under subsection (4), the decision does not take effect until the bankrupt's creditors appoint another person as trustee in his place."

(5) In subsection (8), for the words from "a final" to the end substitute "the trustee has given notice under section 331(2)."

(6) After subsection (8) insert—

"(8A) A notice under subsection (8)—
- (a) must not be given before the end of the period prescribed by the rules as the period within which the bankrupt's creditors may object to the trustee's release, and
- (b) must state whether any of the bankrupt's creditors objected to the trustee's release."

78 (1) Section 299 (release of trustee) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1)(a), omit "a general meeting of".

(3) In subsection (3)(a)—
- (a) for the words from "case" to "died" substitute "following cases";
- (b) after "hold office" insert "—
  - (i) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the bankrupt's creditors and the creditors have not decided against his release,
  - (ii) the person has died;".

(4) For subsection (3)(b) substitute—

"(b) in the following cases, such time as the Secretary of State may, on an application by the person, determine—

(i) the person has been removed from office by a decision of the bankrupt's creditors and the creditors have decided against his release,

(ii) the person has been removed from office by the court or by the Secretary of State,

(iii) the person has vacated office under section 298(6);".

(5) In subsection (3)(d), for paragraphs (i) and (ii) substitute—

"(i) if any of the bankrupt's creditors objected to the person's release before the end of the period for so objecting prescribed by the rules, such time as the Secretary of State may, on an application by that person, determine, and

(ii) otherwise, the time at which the person vacated office."

(6) After subsection (3) insert—

"(3A) Where the person is removed from office by a decision of the bankrupt's creditors, any decision of the bankrupt's creditors as to whether the person should have his release must be made by a creditors' decision procedure."

79 (1) Section 300 (vacancy in office of trustee) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (3) substitute—

"(3) The official receiver may ask the bankrupt's creditors to appoint a person as trustee, and must do so if so requested by not less than one tenth in value of the bankrupt's creditors.

(3A) If the official receiver makes such a request the bankrupt's creditors may in accordance with the rules appoint a person as trustee."

(3) In subsection (4) for the words from "summoned" to "vacancy" substitute "asked, and is not proposing to ask, the bankrupt's creditors to appoint a person as trustee".

(4) In subsection (8) for the words from "holding" to "331" substitute "vacation of office by the trustee under section 298(8)".

80 (1) Section 301 (creditors' committees) is amended as follows.

(2) In subsection (1), for the words from "general" to "otherwise)" substitute "bankrupt's creditors".

(3) In subsection (2)—

(a) for "A general meeting of the" substitute "The";

(b) for "an appointment made by that meeting" substitute "the appointment".

81 In section 314(7) (trustee's power and duty to summon creditors' meeting)—

(a) for "summon a general meeting of" substitute "seek a decision on a matter from";

(b) for "summon such a meeting" substitute "seek a decision on a matter".

82 In section 330 (final distribution), after subsection (1) insert—

"(1A) A notice under subsection (1)(b) need not be given to opted-out creditors."

83 (1) Section 331 (final meeting) is amended as follows.

(2) For subsection (2) substitute—

"(2) The trustee must give the bankrupt's creditors (other than opted-out creditors) notice that it appears to the trustee that the administration of the bankrupt's estate is for practical purposes complete.

(2A) The notice must—

(a) be accompanied by a report of the trustee's administration of the bankrupt's estate;

(b) explain the effect of section 299(3)(d) and how the creditors may object to the trustee's release."

(3) Omit subsections (3) and (4).

(4) In the heading, for "meeting" substitute "report".

84 In section 332(2) (bankrupt's home), for "summon a meeting under section 331" substitute "give notice under section 331(2)".

85 In section 356(2)(c) (offence of making false statements)—

(a) for "at any meeting of his creditors" substitute "in connection with any creditors' decision procedure or deemed consent procedure";

(b) for "at such a meeting" substitute "in connection with such a procedure".

86 In Schedule 9, after paragraph 12 insert—

"12A Provision about how a bankrupt's creditors may appoint a person as trustee."

87 In paragraph 13 of Schedule 9 (creditors' committee)—

(a) after "to the" insert "establishment,";

(b) for "established under" substitute "provided for by".

Other provision

88 Omit section 379A (remote attendance at meetings) and the heading before it.

SCHEDULE 10

Section 133

TRUSTEES IN BANKRUPTCY

Insolvency Act 1986 (c. 45)

1 The Insolvency Act 1986 is amended as provided in paragraphs 2 to 11.

2 In section 286(3) (interim receiver to have powers and duties conferred by section 287) for "of a receiver and manager under" substitute "given by".

3 (1) Section 287 (receivership pending appointment of first trustee) is amended as follows.

(2) For the heading substitute "Powers of interim receiver".

(3) In subsection (1)—
(a) for the words from the beginning to "official receiver" substitute "An interim receiver appointed under section 286";
(b) for "bankrupt's estate" substitute "debtor's property".

(4) In subsection (2)—
(a) for "the official" substitute "an interim";
(b) for "bankrupt's estate" substitute "debtor's property";
(c) for "the estate" (in both places) substitute "the property".

(5) In subsection (3)—
(a) for "The official" substitute "An interim";
(b) for "of the estate" substitute "of the debtor's property";
(c) in paragraph (a), for the words from "any" to the end substitute "the debtor's property,";
(d) for paragraph (b), substitute—
"(b) is not required to do anything that involves his incurring expenditure, except in pursuance of directions given by—
(i) the Secretary of State, where the official receiver is the interim receiver, or
(ii) the court, in any other case,";
(e) in paragraph (c) for "bankrupt's" substitute "debtor's".

(6) In subsection (4)—
(a) for paragraph (a) substitute—
"(a) an interim receiver acting as receiver or manager of the debtor's property under this section seizes or disposes of any property which is not the debtor's property, and";
(b) in paragraph (b) for "official receiver" substitute "interim receiver";
(c) for "official receiver is" substitute "interim receiver is";
(d) for "bankruptcy" substitute "interim receivership".

(7) Omit subsection (5).

4 Omit section 291(1) to (3) (bankrupt's duty to deliver possession of estate to official receiver).

5 (1) Section 292 (power to make appointments) is amended as follows.

(2) For the heading substitute "Appointment of trustees: general provision".

(3) For subsection (1) substitute—

"(1) This section applies to any appointment of a person (other than the official receiver) as trustee of a bankrupt's estate."

(4) Omit subsection (5).

6 Omit sections 293 to 295 (meeting of creditors to appoint first trustee).

7 In section 296 (appointment of trustee by Secretary of State)—
(a) in subsection (1) omit "(other than section 297(1) below)";
(b) in subsection (3) omit "or on a reference under section 295".

8 Omit section 297.

9 (1) Section 298 (removal of trustees) is amended as follows.

(2) Omit subsection (2).

(3) In subsection (4)—
(a) for "section 293(3) or 295(4)" substitute "section 291A(1)";
(b) for "section 297(5)" substitute "section 291A(2)".

10 Omit paragraph 10 of Schedule 9 (exercise by official receiver of functions under section 287).

11 In paragraph 30 of Schedule 9 omit ", of the official receiver while acting as a receiver or manager under section 287".

Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013 (c. 24)

12 In Schedule 19 to the Enterprise and Regulatory Reform Act 2013, omit paragraphs 20 to 22.

SCHEDULE 11

Section 144

SINGLE REGULATOR OF INSOLVENCY PRACTITIONERS: SUPPLEMENTARY PROVISION

Operation of this Schedule

1 (1) This Schedule has effect in relation to regulations under section 144 designating a body (referred to in this Schedule as "the Regulations") as follows—
(a) paragraphs 2 to 13 have effect where the Regulations establish the body;
(b) paragraphs 6, 7 and 9 to 13 have effect where the Regulations designate an existing body (see section 144(2)(b));
(c) paragraph 14 also has effect where the Regulations designate an existing body that is an unincorporated association.

(2) Provision made in the Regulations by virtue of paragraph 6 or 12, where that paragraph has effect as mentioned in sub-paragraph (1)(b), may only apply in relation to—
(a) things done by or in relation to the body in or in connection with the exercise of functions conferred on it by the Regulations, and
(b) functions of the body which are functions so conferred.

Name, members and chair

2 (1) The Regulations must prescribe the name by which the body is to be known.

(2) The Regulations must provide that the members of the body must be appointed by the Secretary of State after such consultation as the Secretary of State thinks appropriate.

(3) The Regulations must provide that the Secretary of State must appoint one of the members as the chair of the body.

(4) The Regulations may include provision about—
  (a) the terms on which the members of the body hold and vacate office;
  (b) the terms on which the person appointed as the chair holds and vacates that office.

Remuneration etc.

3 (1) The Regulations must provide that the body must pay to its chair and members such remuneration and allowances in respect of expenses properly incurred by them in the exercise of their functions as the Secretary of State may determine.

(2) The Regulations must provide that, as regards any member (including the chair) in whose case the Secretary of State so determines, the body must pay or make provision for the payment of—
  (a) such pension, allowance or gratuity to or in respect of that person on retirement or death as the Secretary of State may determine, or
  (b) such contributions or other payment towards the provision of such a pension, allowance or gratuity as the Secretary of State may determine.

(3) The Regulations must provide that where—
  (a) a person ceases to be a member of the body otherwise than on the expiry of the term of office, and
  (b) it appears to the Secretary of State that there are special circumstances which make it right for that person to be compensated,

the body must make a payment to the person by way of compensation of such amount as the Secretary of State may determine.

Staff

4 The Regulations must provide that—
  (a) the body may appoint such persons to be its employees as the body considers appropriate, and
  (b) the employees are to be appointed on such terms and conditions as the body may determine.

Proceedings

5 (1) The Regulations may make provision about the proceedings of the body.

(2) The Regulations may, in particular—
  (a) authorise the body to exercise any function by means of committees consisting wholly or partly of members of the body;
  (b) provide that the validity of proceedings of the body, or of any such committee, is not affected by any vacancy among the members or any defect in the appointment of a member.

Fees

6 (1) The Regulations may make provision—
(a) about the setting and charging of fees by the body in connection with the exercise of its functions;
(b) for the retention by the body of any such fees payable to it;
(c) about the application by the body of such fees.

(2) The Regulations may, in particular, make provision—
(a) for the body to be able to set such fees as appear to it to be sufficient to defray the expenses of the body exercising its functions, taking one year with another;
(b) for the setting of fees by the body to be subject to the approval of the Secretary of State.

(3) The expenses referred to in sub-paragraph (2)(a) include any expenses incurred by the body on such staff, accommodation, services and other facilities as appear to it to be necessary or expedient for the proper exercise of its functions.

Consultation

7 The Regulations may make provision as to the circumstances and manner in which the body must consult others before exercising any function conferred on it by the Regulations.

Training and other services

8 (1) The Regulations may make provision authorising the body to provide training or other services to any person.

(2) The Regulations may make provision authorising the body—
(a) to charge for the provision of any such training or other services, and
(b) to calculate any such charge on the basis that it considers to be the appropriate commercial basis.

Report and accounts

9 (1) The Regulations must require the body, at least once in each 12 month period, to report to the Secretary of State on—
(a) the exercise of the functions conferred on it by the Regulations, and
(b) such other matters as may be prescribed in the Regulations.

(2) The Regulations must require the Secretary of State to lay before Parliament a copy of each report received under this paragraph.

(3) Unless section 394 of the Companies Act 2006 applies to the body (duty on every company to prepare individual accounts), the Regulations must provide that the Secretary of State may give directions to the body with respect to the preparation of its accounts.

(4) Unless the body falls within sub-paragraph (5), the Regulations must provide that the Secretary of State may give directions to the body with respect to the audit of its accounts.

(5) The body falls within this sub-paragraph if it is a company whose accounts—
  (a) are required to be audited in accordance with Part 16 of the Companies Act 2006 (see section 475 of that Act), or
  (b) are exempt from the requirements of that Part under section 482 of that Act (non-profit making companies subject to public sector audit).

(6) The Regulations may provide that, whether or not section 394 of the Companies Act 2006 applies to the body, the Secretary of State may direct that any provisions of that Act specified in the directions are to apply to the body with or without modifications.

Funding

10 The Regulations may provide that the Secretary of State may make grants to the body.

Financial penalties

11 (1) This paragraph applies where the Regulations include provision enabling the body to impose a financial penalty on a person who is, or has been, authorised to act as an insolvency practitioner (see section 144(5)).

(2) The Regulations—
  (a) must include provision about how the body is to determine the amount of a penalty, and
  (b) may, in particular, prescribe a minimum or maximum amount.

(3) The Regulations must provide that, unless the Secretary of State (with the consent of the Treasury) otherwise directs, income from penalties imposed by the body is to be paid into the Consolidated Fund.

(4) The Regulations may also, in particular—
  (a) include provision for a penalty imposed by the body to be enforced as a debt;
  (b) prescribe conditions that must be met before any action to enforce a penalty may be taken.

Status etc.

12 The Regulations must provide that—
  (a) the body is not to be regarded as acting on behalf of the Crown, and
  (b) its members, officers and employees are not to be regarded as Crown servants.

Transfer schemes

13 (1) This paragraph applies if the Regulations make provision designating a body (whether one established by the Regulations or one already in existence) in place of a body designated by earlier regulations under section 144; and those bodies are referred to as the "new body" and the "former body" respectively.

(2) The Regulations may make provision authorising the Secretary of State to make a scheme (a "transfer scheme") for the transfer of property, rights and liabilities from the former body to the new body.

(3) The Regulations may provide that a transfer scheme may include provision—
  (a) about the transfer of property, rights and liabilities that could not otherwise be transferred;
  (b) about the transfer of property acquired, and rights and liabilities arising, after the making of the scheme.

(4) The Regulations may provide that a transfer scheme may make consequential, supplementary, incidental or transitional provision and may in particular—
  (a) create rights, or impose liabilities, in relation to property or rights transferred;
  (b) make provision about the continuing effect of things done by the former body in respect of anything transferred;
  (c) make provision about the continuation of things (including legal proceedings) in the process of being done by, on behalf of or in relation to the former body in respect of anything transferred;
  (d) make provision for references to the former body in an instrument or other document in respect of anything transferred to be treated as references to the new body;
  (e) make provision for the shared ownership or use of property;
  (f) if the TUPE regulations do not apply to in relation to the transfer, make provision which is the same or similar.

(5) The Regulations must provide that, where the former body is an existing body, a transfer scheme may only make provision in relation to—
  (a) things done by or in relation to the former body in or in connection with the exercise of functions conferred on it by previous regulations under section 144, and
  (b) functions of the body which are functions so conferred.

(6) In sub-paragraph (4)(f), "TUPE regulations" means the Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006 (S.I. 2006/246).

(7) In this paragraph—
  (a) references to rights and liabilities include rights and liabilities relating to a contract of employment;
  (b) references to the transfer of property include the grant of a lease.

Additional provision where body is unincorporated association

14 (1) This paragraph applies where the body is an unincorporated association.

(2) The Regulations must provide that any relevant proceedings may be brought by or against the body in the name of any body corporate whose constitution provides for the establishment of the body.

(3) In sub-paragraph (2) "relevant proceedings" means proceedings brought in or in connection with the exercise of any function conferred on the body by the Regulations.

© Crown copyright 2015

Printed in the UK by The Stationery Office Limited under the authority and superintendence of Carol Tullo, Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office and Queen's Printer of Acts of Parliament

03/2015 49030 19585